

**Central Coast  
LRMP  
Completion  
Table**



***Report of  
Consensus  
Recommendations  
to the  
Provincial  
Government and  
First Nations***





May 2004

Dear Reader:

*Re: Central Coast Land and Resource Management Plan Completion Table  
Recommendations*











This Report documents the consensus recommendations from the Central Coast LRMP Completion Table. The recommendations provide a guide to future management and planning of land and resources on the Central Coast of British Columbia.

These recommendations will inform Government and First Nations in the Government to Government discussions to take place in 2004.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'James M. Lornie'.

James M. Lornie  
Process Chair  
Central Coast LRMP

## CCLRMP Completion Table Report Ratification Signatures

	Lloyd Juhala	Small Business Forestry
	Darol Smith	Labour
	Dennis Crockford	Terrestrial Conservation
	Hans Granander	Major Forest Companies
	Ray Pillman	Recreation / Wildlife
	Tim Walters	
	Ric Careless	Tourism
	Brian Welchman	Energy and Mining
	Patricia McKim	North Local Communities
	Mayor Larry Pepper	South Local Government/ Communities

## Executive Summary

---

This report presents the recommendations of the planning table for the Central Coast Land and Resource Management Plan (LRMP), a sub-regional land use plan covering approximately 4.6 million hectares of British Columbia's central coast. The recommendations have been developed to direct the management of public lands and resources for the terrestrial portions of the plan area. Strategic planning for the marine component was completed as part of Phase 1 of the Central Coast Planning process.

The recommendations represent consensus agreements reached by the participants of the Central Coast LRMP Completion Table (the Table) as a result of more than two years of work. The Table built on the work of the Phase 1 Planning Table, which was completed in April 2001.

The Table comprised multiple stakeholders, local and provincial government representatives, and representatives from the area's First Nations. First Nation representatives participated at the Table, but abstained from decision making in consideration of Government to Government discussions on these recommendations. First Nations participation does not indicate formal ratification of the recommendations or motions of the Table.

The process of building the recommendations considered all interests and values identified for provincial Crown land, as presented by stakeholders, interests groups, local government, First Nations, and members of the public.

The recommendations were informed by:

- Scientific information supplied by the independent Coast Information Team and the province;
- First Nation presentations, including draft First Nation land use plans;
- The April 2001 Framework Agreement, draft plan and zoning map;
- First Nation and Sector presentations, interests and values; and
- Socio Economic and Environmental Assessment information from the Province and independent consultants.

This report begins with a description of the plan area, including social, economic and environmental attributes and an overview of the planning process. This is followed by details of the consensus agreement recommendations reached by the participants of the Table, including:

- An agreement on Ecosystem Based Management, along with its implementation, monitoring, and adaptive management;
- A land use zone map, along with zone definitions for protection areas, biodiversity areas and ecosystem based management operating areas;
- General management directions (GMD);
- Area specific direction regarding visual resource management and grizzly bear management areas;
- Other recommendations for the plan area; and
- Recommendations for plan implementation, monitoring and transition.

The report contains a detailed description of the operating regime recommended for Ecosystem Based Management (EBM). EBM is *"an adaptive approach to*

*managing human activities that seeks to ensure the coexistence of healthy, fully functioning ecosystems and human communities”.*

The Table recommends the following land uses in the context of EBM.

### **Summary of Land Use Zones**

<b>Zone</b>	<b>Hectares (% of plan area)</b>	<b>Uses</b>
Existing Protected Areas	521,465 (11.1%)	No logging, mining, or hydro-electric development, but some tourism/recreation activities, as permitted by individual Park management plans.
Proposed EBM Protection Areas	469,239 (10.1%)	No logging, mining or hydro-electric development but potential for tourism/recreation and other activities and related infrastructure as guided by the protection area management direction (Appendix 5). First Nation traditional use rights are maintained.
Proposed EBM Biodiversity Areas	545,000 (11.8%)	No logging or hydro-electric development but potential for mining, tourism/recreation and other activities and related infrastructure. First Nation traditional use rights are maintained. The primary role is conservation and the contribution to the maintenance of species, ecosystems and seral stage diversity and ecosystem function.
Proposed EBM Operating Areas	3, 077,793 (66.7%)	Full resource use permitted in accordance with EBM principles. First Nation traditional use rights are maintained.
<b>Total</b>	<b>4,613,497 (100%)</b>	

In addition to the proposed land use zones as shown above and general management direction which will apply in the zones, the Table has provided recommendations for two Grizzly Bear Management Areas, and Visual Management Areas.

The Grizzly Bear Management Areas (GBMAs) overlay each of the three zones. Within the GBMAs the focus is on maintaining existing population levels and increased monitoring and research. There are no additional constraints on land tenuring or industrial resource activities as a consequence of the GBMA recommendations .

The Visual Management zones guide visual management of key tourism and recreation areas important to tourism operators, forestry operators and recreational users, such as major marine travel routes, highway corridors, lodges and marine approaches to protected areas. Visual management areas will be applied in a manner consistent with definitions of Proposed EBM Protection Areas, Proposed EBM Biodiversity Areas and Proposed EBM Operating Areas.

## Table of Contents

CCLRMP COMPLETION TABLE REPORT RATIFICATION SIGNATURES.....	ii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	iii
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	v
1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	1
1.1 Plan Area .....	2
1.1.1 Physical Description.....	2
1.1.2 Environmental Values .....	2
1.1.3 Socio-Economic Values .....	6
1.1.4 Communities and First Nations .....	8
1.2 LRMP Process Overview.....	9
1.2.1 Context.....	9
1.2.2 Phase 1 CCLCRMP .....	9
1.2.3 Framework Agreement (April 2001) .....	10
1.2.4 Completion Phase .....	10
1.3 Protocols with First Nations .....	11
1.4 Government to Government Process.....	11
1.5 Social, Economic and Environmental Assessment.....	11
1.5.1 Assessment Approach.....	11
1.5.2 Benchmark Scenario (Base Case).....	12
1.5.3 Socio-Economic Assessment of Scenarios .....	12
2.0 ECOSYSTEM BASED MANAGEMENT.....	13
2.1 Introduction .....	13
2.2 EBM Products .....	13
2.2.1 Scientific Basis for Ecosystem-Based Management: Compendium and Compilation.....	13
2.2.2 Hydoriparian Planning Guide .....	14
2.2.3 EBM Framework.....	14
2.2.4 EBM Handbook .....	18
2.3 Thresholds and Management Targets .....	19
2.3.1 Refinement of Representational Thresholds .....	19
2.3.2 Operational Targets.....	20
2.3.3 Transitional Management Targets .....	21
2.4 Relationship of the Handbook to General Management Direction .....	23
2.5 Legal Objectives .....	25
3.0 ECOSYSTEM BASED MANAGEMENT ZONES.....	26
3.1 Introduction .....	26
3.2 Ecosystem Based Management Zone Definitions and Descriptions.....	26
3.2.1 EBM Protection Areas (469,239 hectares).....	26
3.2.2 EBM Biodiversity Areas (545,000 hectares).....	29
3.2.3 EBM Operating Areas (3,077,793 hectares).....	29
4.0 GENERAL MANAGEMENT DIRECTIONS .....	30
4.1 Introduction .....	30
4.2 Completion of Outstanding General Management Directions .....	31
4.2.1 Terrestrial Biodiversity Conservation .....	33
4.2.2 Hydro-riparian and Aquatic Ecosystems .....	35
4.2.3 Fish and Wildlife Habitat.....	38
4.2.4 Grizzly Bears .....	42

4.2.5 Water .....	47
4.2.6 Communities .....	49
4.2.7 Access & Facilities Management .....	53
4.2.8 Tourism and Recreation .....	55
4.2.9 Non-Timber Forest Products .....	59
4.2.10 Guide Outfitting, Hunting and Trapping .....	62
4.2.11 Subsurface Resources and Aggregates .....	64
4.2.12 Forestry/Timber .....	67
4.2.13 Visuals Management .....	70
5.0 ADDITIONAL TABLE RECOMMENDATIONS .....	74
5.1 Introduction .....	74
5.2 Forest Tenures .....	74
5.3 Cost of Ecosystem Based Management .....	74
5.4 Funding First Nation Land Use Plans .....	74
5.5 CCLRMP Completion Table Expectations .....	74
6.0 IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND FLEXIBILITY .....	76
6.1 Introduction .....	76
6.2 CCLRMP Implementation and Monitoring .....	76
6.3 Ecosystem Based Management Implementation .....	76
6.3.1 Adaptive Management .....	76
6.3.2 EBM Council Mandate .....	78
6.3.3 EBM Council Membership .....	78
6.3.4 EBM Council Roles .....	79
6.3.5 EBM Council Procedures .....	79
6.3.6 EBM Science Team .....	80
6.3.7 EBM Science Team Roles .....	80
6.3.8 Recommended Initial Focus of the EBM Science team .....	80
6.4 Flexibility .....	81
7.0 TABLE MEMBER CLARIFICATIONS REGARDING ABSTENTIONS TO TABLE MOTIONS .....	82
7.1 Introduction .....	82
7.2 Wildlife Sector Statement (BC Wildlife Federation) .....	82
7.3 Terrestrial Conservation Sector Statement .....	82
8.0 BIBLIOGRAPHY .....	83
9.0 GLOSSARY OF TERMS .....	85
10.0 ACRONYMS USED IN THIS REPORT .....	92

## Appendices

---

- Appendix 1 – Maps
- Appendix 2 – Terms of Reference for Completion Table, List of Sectors and  
Representatives, and Plan Vision Statement
- Appendix 3 – Completion Table Motions
- Appendix 4 – Agreement in Principle (December 9, 2003)
- Appendix 5 – Management Direction for Protection Areas
- Appendix 6 – Visual Management Agreement and Examples
- Appendix 7 – CIT EBM Reference Documents
- Appendix 8 – Unresolved GMD Objectives and Strategies

## 1.0 Introduction

---

This report presents the recommendations of the planning table for the Central Coast Land and Resource Management Plan (CCLRMP), a sub-regional land use plan covering approximately 4.6 million hectares of British Columbia's central coast. The recommendations have been developed to direct the management of public lands and resources for the terrestrial portions of the plan area. Strategic planning for the marine component was completed as part of Phase 1 of the Central Coast Planning process and detailed planning is ongoing.

These recommendations will be submitted to the Provincial Government and First Nations for Government to Government discussions. Those recommendations that are agreed to by both parties will be incorporated into the final Central Coast LRMP and submitted to Cabinet for approval. Once approved by Cabinet, the recommendations will direct the management of all Crown land and resources in the plan area.

The Table began with and built on the work of the Phase 1 planning table, which was completed in April 2001. The recommendations in this document represent consensus agreements reached by the participants of the CCLRMP Completion Table (the Table) as a result of more than two years of work (refer to Appendix 3 for a summary of motions agreed to by the Table and their relationship to this document). The contents of this report are intended to be consistent with the minutes and motions passed by the Table.

Implementation of the approved plan will be in accordance with legislative and regulatory provisions including the *Forest and Range Practices Act*, the *Land Act*, the *Park Act*, the *Wildlife Act*, and the Two-Zone policy for mineral resource management as stated in the Mineral Tenure Act.

The Table was composed of multiple stakeholders, local and provincial government representatives, and representatives of the area's First Nations. First Nation representatives participated at the Table, but abstained from decision making in consideration of the pending Government to Government discussions on these recommendations. First Nations participation does not indicate formal ratification of the recommendations or motions of the Table.

The process of building the recommendations considered all interests and values identified for provincial Crown land, as presented by stakeholders, interests groups, local government, First Nations, and members of the public. Technical information was provided by the Coast Information Team (CIT) and government agencies.

This report contains:

- A description of the plan area, including social, economic and environmental attributes;
- An overview of the planning process;
- A description of Ecosystem Based Management, its implementation, monitoring and adaptive management;
- A land use zoning map and zone descriptions;
- General Management Direction;
- Area specific direction; and
- Other recommendations for the plan area.



## **1.1 Plan Area**

### ***1.1.1 Physical Description***

The CCLRMP area (plan area) is approximately 4.6 million hectares in size. The plan area extends from Princess Royal Island to the north west entrance of Bute Inlet, and adjoining the Vancouver Island land use plan boundary to the southwest. The boundary to the east incorporates a large portion of Tweedsmuir Provincial Park (see Map 1 in Appendix 1).

The plan area is characterized by a varied and rugged landscape including numerous low-lying islands, an intricate shoreline cut by narrow, steep-walled fjords and channels, coastal plains with a mosaic of wetlands, temperate rainforests, and high mountains interspersed by very productive valley bottoms.

The plan area has a typical coastal climate, with mild and wet winters and a mean annual total precipitation ranging from around 1,000 to 4,500 mm or more. Precipitation diminishes remarkably as one moves inland from the coast.

The recommendations focus on the terrestrial and freshwater components of the plan area. Strategic planning for the marine component was completed as part of Phase 1 of the Central Coast Planning process.

### ***1.1.2 Environmental Values***

#### ***1.1.2.1 Ecoregions and Biogeoclimatic Zones***

There are two classification structures used to describe the interplay of biological, geological and climatic systems within the province: the eco-region system and the biogeoclimatic system.

The eco-region system, based on climatic processes and landforms, divides the province into a nested system of eco-provinces, eco-regions and eco-sections. These are areas of similar climate, physiography, oceanography, hydrology, vegetation, and wildlife potential.

The Coast and Mountain Eco-province within the plan area contains two Eco-regions (Coastal Gap and Pacific Ranges) and 10 Eco-sections. The topography within the Coastal Gap consists of rugged, steep valleys and somewhat rounded mountains with lower relief than the Pacific Ranges to the south. The lower relief allows considerable moisture to enter the interior of the province. The Pacific Ranges include the coastal islands, channels and fjords and high, rugged mountains with high levels of precipitation on the windward side. Five of the eco-sections represent over 90% of the plan area - the Northern Pacific Ranges (45%), the Kitimat Ranges (22%), the Hecate Lowland (17%), the Outer Fiordland (7.6%), and the Queen Charlotte Strait (.06%) (Map 2, Appendix 1).

The biogeoclimatic system is a land classification system that groups together ecosystems with similar climate, soils, variations in altitude and vegetation. The system divides the province into climatic zones (e.g. Alpine Tundra, Coastal Western Hemlock), sub-zones, and variants, and is used primarily for forestry management.

There are three major biogeoclimatic zones within the plan area: Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH) which characterizes the low elevations and valley bottoms (52% of plan area), the Mountain Hemlock zone (MH) which lies at the sub-alpine level (15% of plan

area), and the Alpine Tundra zone (24% of plan area) which is located at higher elevations. These biogeoclimatic zones are divided into smaller units called subzones and variants based on further differences in climate, soils and vegetation.

#### *1.1.2.2 Vegetation*

Forests cover about half of the plan area with approximately half classified as old growth (older than 250 yrs). Younger age forests are concentrated in the southern portion where extensive logging has occurred (Map 3, Appendix 1). Old growth forests are a complex mixture of trees and plants, such as lichens, of various sizes, species and ages including standing dead trees.

Most of the forested land in the plan area falls within the Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH) zone and represents more than 98% of the timber harvesting land base (THLB). Coniferous forests (mainly western hemlock and western red cedar) predominate in the CWH zone. Commonly called “temperate rainforests” because of the mild, wet climate in which they grow, these forests are complex and often highly productive ecosystems. BC’s temperate rainforests are among the most impressive in the world. About half of the world’s temperate rainforests are found on North America’s west coast.

Red alder and Black cottonwood are the most widespread and abundant deciduous tree species in the area, commonly found on heavily disturbed sites such as abandoned logging roads, slide tracks, or in previously flooded areas. Wetlands, particularly bogs, are common in coastal lowland areas. Dense, closed-canopy forests are characteristic of the lower part of the Mountain Hemlock zone. At higher elevations, forests thin out to open parkland, heath and meadow. Vegetation in the Alpine Tundra zone is relatively scarce and occurs primarily at middle and lower elevations of the zone and in moist, snowy regions.

#### *1.1.2.3 Water*

The Central Coast is generally an area of heavy precipitation especially in the autumn and winter months. The climate is primarily controlled by the eastward flowing winds off the Pacific Ocean onto the Coast Mountain Range. Frequent winter storms deposit a large amount of precipitation as moist air is forced over the mountains. Heavy accumulation of snow and ice occurs at higher elevations. Summers tend to be drier as slow moving high pressure areas develop offshore and fewer frontal systems move onto the coast.

Stream-flow patterns are linked to watershed elevation. In lower elevation watersheds, stream volumes follow the rainfall pattern of high in winter and low, sometimes approaching zero flow in the summer.

Higher elevation watersheds have greater flow in the late spring/summer from snow pack and glacier melt, and less in the winter due to freezing temperatures and snow accumulation.

In watersheds with a balance of low and high elevation areas, flows generally peak both in late spring (snowmelt) and in the fall (rain) and subside in winter and late summer.

Mountain streams can experience dramatic flow variations within a season. During rain-on-snow conditions or with warmer weather during snow-melt, short term peak flows can be substantially greater than the average seasonal flow.

#### *1.1.2.4 Fish*

The plan area has 6 species of anadromous Pacific salmon in the many streams and rivers; sockeye, chinook, coho, chum, steelhead, and pink. There are also anadromous cutthroat trout, eulachon, and Dolly Varden char present.

Fish producing systems within the plan area range from large (over 100 kilometres of fish presence), to small tributary systems with less than 1 kilometre of known fish habitat (Map 4, Appendix 1). The plan area has approximately 690 known salmon-producing systems.

Within the Central Coast area there are at least 9 chinook, 60 coho, 18 sockeye, 35 pink, and 40 chum stocks identified as having a high risk of extinction. Some other fish populations on the coast are also threatened.

Eulachon is an anadromous species, spawning in rivers and migrating offshore to feed for 2 to 5 years before returning to spawn. Eulachon are culturally important and are highly regarded as a food fish by First Nations people. Nine primary eulachon-producing systems are present in the plan area. In addition, there are several species of fish, and other marine resources that rely on the exchange of nutrients and other connections with the plan area's terrestrial landscape.

#### *1.1.2.5 Terrestrial Wildlife*

The plan area is representative of the temperate rainforest biome (Alaska to Oregon) in terms of the relative richness of the terrestrial vertebrate fauna, the forest-dwelling nature of the majority of terrestrial vertebrate species, the importance of forest structure to the vertebrate fauna, the disproportionate significance of riparian areas to forest-dwelling vertebrates and the importance of estuaries to fauna and to overall ecosystem functioning.

Four species of ungulates can be found in the plan area: Moose, Roosevelt elk, Mountain Goat (Map 5, Appendix 1) and Black-tailed deer (Map 6, Appendix 1). Mountain Goats generally occupy the steep, rugged terrain of alpine and subalpine habitats. Along the coast, winter ranges are invariably at low elevations where snow is shallow or absent.

Black-tailed Deer occur along the entire coast of British Columbia and most coastal islands. Deer numbers vary greatly depending on habitat conditions, the severity of the winters, and the number of predators, with populations generally between 150,000 and 250,000 in recent decades. Old-growth forests form a key part of the winter range for coastal Black-tailed Deer and are critical for their survival. They provide shelter, intercept snow so that it is shallow, and provide forage in the form of broken branches and the lichens that grow on them.

Although Moose are not abundant in the plan area, a number of watersheds provide moderate winter habitat suitability. A small population of Roosevelt Elk are present in the Phillips watershed located in the southern part of the plan area.

Marbled Murrelet (Map 7, Appendix 1) are seabirds which primarily nest in coastal old-growth forests using large branches for platforms. The Marbled Murrelet is distributed along the Pacific coast from Alaska to California. Within the plan area, they concentrate mostly around Princess Royal Channel and the associated fjords. The species is red listed (considered endangered or threatened) provincially and listed federally as threatened.

In addition to the Marbled Murrelet, red-listed vertebrates found in the plan area include the Northern Goshawk and Keen's Long-eared Myotis. Vulnerable (blue-listed) vertebrates include the Grizzly Bear, Fisher, Wolverine (*luscus* subspecies), Tailed Frog (mostly aquatic), Great Blue Heron, Short-eared owl, Peregrine Falcon (*pealei* subspecies), and Sandhill Crane.

The Central Coast is home to many of the province's Grizzly Bears, as well as Black Bears and the Kermode Bear, a rare genetic race of the Black Bear (also known as the Spirit bear). Black Bear populations are not currently threatened or vulnerable. Grizzly Bears are a focal species and designated 'special concern' under COSEWIC and blue-listed by the Province. In addition, recent declines in salmon populations appear to have led to a destabilization of the Grizzly Bear population in localized areas.

There are over 1.1 million hectares of high capability Grizzly Bear habitat in the plan area. Low elevation riparian old growth habitats are defined as critical Grizzly Bear habitat. Other important habitats include upland old growth forest, estuarine grasslands, avalanche slopes and subalpine meadows.

The Kermode Bear is a white coated Black Bear. White is another of the Black Bear's many coat variants, but the gene that carries it is double recessive which causes it to manifest very rarely. The Kermode Bear lives in the greatest numbers on the islands off the north-central coast of British Columbia, primarily on Gribbell Island and Princess Royal Island.

The Coast and Mountains Eco-province supports 79% of all bird species known to occur in the province, and has the second highest number of birds in British Columbia. Water birds make extensive use of the coastal wetlands as well as near-shore and off-shore habitats, including islands, islets and cliffs. The Central Coast area is also an important corridor for millions of migrating birds, especially shorebirds and waterfowl.

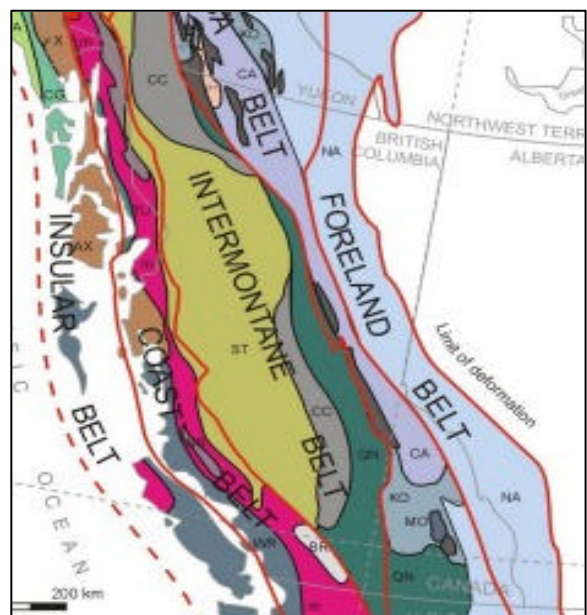
#### 1.1.2.6 The Geology of the Central Coast Area

Five linear geological belts run north-northwest through BC. Each belt features a distinctive combination of bedrock geology and land forms, reflecting their geological history.

The Central Coast plan area is predominantly in the Coast Belt. The Coast Belt resulted from the collision of the Insular and Intermontane belts about 50 million years ago. The granitic rocks developed in place and were pushed up from both sides, forming what is sometimes called a "suture zone".

The bedrock is 80% granitic rock forming one of the largest granitic masses in the world. Nestled between the granitic intrusions are discrete "islands" of metamorphosed, folded and faulted, volcanic and sedimentary rock.

The rugged and extensive mountains are pierced by long, deep inlets that were carved by numerous glacial events.



### **1.1.3 Socio-Economic Values**

#### *1.1.3.1 Introduction – Current Socio-Economic Setting*

The 2001 census indicated that the Central Coast area had a population of 5,060. This represented a reduction of about 7% from 1996, due primarily to declines in resource industries. Further population declines since 2001 have occurred. In contrast, from 1986 to 1996, the overall population increased by 22%, driven by growth in most economic sectors.

About half the population of the plan area lives in the Bella Coola valley (Bella Coola, Hagensborg, Firvale, and Stuie areas). First Nations make up slightly more than 50% of the plan area residents, and this proportion is growing. BC STATS projects very slow growth in the total population.

The socio-economic situation of the communities in the plan area is depressed and has worsened in recent years. Unemployment rates and other social measures (e.g., health, education, children at risk) are lower in the area, particularly in First Nations communities, than for the rest of BC.

#### *1.1.3.2 Economic Structure*

In 2001, the plan area had a labour force of 2,456. This represented a decrease of about 12% since 1996, reflecting out-migration of fishing and forestry workers. There have been further labour force declines since 2001, due to a downturn in the forest industry and the closure of offices by Interfor and the Ministry of Forests in the Bella Coola valley.

In 2001, the public sector (health, education, public administration) was the most important source of livelihood in the area, accounting for 35% of total income. Transfer payments (income support and Canada Pensions) accounted for 20% of total income. Other important sources of livelihood were forestry (13%), fisheries (11%), tourism (5%) and construction (5%). More recent local information suggests significant decreases in public sector and forestry employment and income since 2001.

Over the long-term, goods producing sectors are declining as a proportion of plan area income, while the service sector has increased, consistent with a province-wide trend.

#### **Forestry**

Forestry is currently the largest economic activity within the plan area and is an important element in economic development. While forestry represents the most extensive land use in the plan area, less than 12% of the total land area of 4.6 million hectares is considered to be within the Timber Harvesting Land Base (THLB) (Map 8, Appendix 1). The vast majority of the THLB is on Crown land, less than 1% owned privately.

In 2001, forestry accounted for 15% of jobs and 13% of incomes in the area. Most of the forest sector employment is related to logging and silviculture. Almost all of the timber harvested in the area is taken to southern Vancouver Island or the Lower Mainland for processing. Following the completion of Phase 1 of the LRMP process, the AAC was reduced from approximately 3.8 million cubic meters (m<sup>3</sup>) to approximately 3.2 million m<sup>3</sup>. Harvest levels have been substantially below the current Allowable Annual Cut (AAC) in recent years.

### ***Tourism***

Tourism is an important element in economic development strategies for all Central Coast communities.

In 2001, tourism accounted for 13% of local jobs and 6% of local income. The most significant components of the tourism industry include food and accommodation in the main communities and saltwater charters/lodges.

### ***Recreation***

The area offers high quality recreation opportunities such as sports fishing, boating, kayaking, hiking and hunting (Map 9, Appendix 1). Non commercial recreation activities in the Central Coast area contribute to the local economy through spending by recreationalists.

### ***Commercial Fisheries***

In 2001, fishing (salmon, roe herring, herring spawn-on-kelp, groundfish, and shellfish) and several small processing plants provided 19% of resident employment and 11% of income in the plan area. The number of resident fishing/processing jobs has declined significantly since 1996 due primarily to salmon harvest declines and the buyback of licences. More recently, employment has become more stable.

### ***Aquaculture***

There are 4 shellfish and over 50 salmon farms located in the southern portion of the plan area, almost 50% of the provincial total. Most of the 640 jobs are held by residents of northern Vancouver Island. One fish farm is located north of Cape Caution and is operated by the Kitasoo First Nation on a joint venture basis.

### ***Agriculture***

In 2001, agriculture contributed 2% of local employment and 1% of personal income. Most agriculture within the plan area is in the Bella Coola valley. The number of farms and employment has been increasing historically.

### ***Mining and Energy***

The Central Coast is an area of complex geology with potential for copper, gold, zinc, silver, molybdenum, dimension stone, limestone, graphite, clay, decorative stone, garnet, wollastonite, gemstones, carving stone, sand and gravel and quarried rock (Map 10, Appendix 1).

There are no operating mines in the plan area, however a number of mines have operated in the past. An aggregate project has been proposed for an area near Bella Coola.

There are small-scale hydro-electric projects at Kingcome Inlet, Oweekeno Village, Klemtu, Bella Coola and Ocean Falls. Geothermal energy is not utilized in the plan area, but there are documented and potential hot-springs.

### ***Non-Timber Forest Products***

The best known commercial botanical in the plan area is the pine mushroom. Pine mushrooms provide seasonal income that varies from year to year, as well as being important to First Nations culture and health. Additional marketable products found in the Central Coast area include western yew bark, cedar oil, floral greenery, and various botanical medical items. Many of these items, and others, have a special cultural and/or spiritual significance to First Nations.

### ***Freshwater Fishing, Hunting and Trapping***

These activities make a relatively minor economic contribution in the plan area, but have significant value for subsistence and traditional uses. These activities contribute to the local economy in the Plan area and have a substantial value for subsistence and traditional uses, particularly to First Nations. The Central Coast contains significant freshwater angling opportunities, such as the Dean River.

There are over 150 freshwater angling guides operating in the plan area; in the Bella Coola area alone, angling license sales average over 6,000 annually. In addition, non-guided angling occurs on hundreds of lakes and non-classified streams/rivers.

Both guided and non-guided hunting activities occur in the plan area. The most hunter-days (i.e., hunting effort) tend to be devoted to Black-tailed Deer, followed by (respectively), Moose, Black Bear, Grizzly Bear, and Mountain Goat.

Trapping is undertaken in the plan area primarily by First Nations. In the North, the most prevalent species trapped are Marten, Beaver, Muskrat, and Mink. In the southern portion Marten, Mink and Raccoon are the main species trapped.

### ***Inter-Regional Linkages***

The Central Coast has strong linkages with the provincial economy. Forestry, aquaculture, and tourism activities in the Central Coast benefit many communities outside the area, primarily on northern Vancouver Island and the Lower Mainland. These communities are home to many of the workers and businesses which supply these sectors.

#### ***1.1.4 Communities and First Nations***

Approximately 5,000 people live in the plan area. The majority of the population in the plan area is located in the communities of Bella Coola, Bella Bella, Hagensborg, Ocean Falls, Rivers Inlet, and Klemtu in the northern portion of the plan area. With the exception of Kingcome Inlet and Gilford Island, there are no sizable communities in the southern portion of the plan area, south of Cape Caution. Most First Nations that have traditional territories in the southern portion reside in Alert Bay, Port Hardy and other locations on Vancouver Island and the Lower Mainland. It is noteworthy that this number of occupied settlements was considerably higher at one time.

### ***First Nations***

Canada's first people have flourished for at least 12,000 years. About 5000 years ago stable settlements began to emerge and increasingly complex cultures developed throughout BC. By 1700, just prior to contact with Europeans, it is estimated that the

area that is now British Columbia supported over 100,000 people, with 7 tribes and 70,000 members inhabiting the west coast. From first contact to 1929, the population of First Nations in BC plummeted to 22,000. Within the plan area there is significant material and oral evidence of abandoned settlements.

First Nations people maintain a high dependence on the natural resources of their traditional territories.

Resident First Nations comprise about 50% of the approximately 5000 residents of the plan area. In addition to First Nations people living on-reserve in the plan area, there are many non-resident First Nations people living on Vancouver Island and the Lower Mainland who have traditional territories in the plan area.

Although numbers have declined recently due to economic concerns in the resource industries, in 1996, about 30% of the on-reserve labour force was employed in the fishing and forestry industries.

First Nations whose traditional territory include some part of the plan area include the Gitga'at, residing at Hartley Bay, the Kitasoo whose main community is located at Klemtu, the Heiltsuk located in Bella Bella, the Nuxalk from Bella Coola, the Wuikinuxv located in Rivers Inlet and the Haisla residing at Kitamaat.

In addition to the First Nations described above, there are 11 First Nations whose members reside primarily outside the Central Coast but have traditional territory in the plan area. These First Nations include 7 members of the Kwakiutl District Council (KDC), three members of the Musgamagw-Tsawataineuk Tribal Council (MTTC), and the Tlowitsis Nation.

## **1.2 LRMP Process Overview**

### **1.2.1 Context**

Land and Resource Management Plans (LRMPs) are strategic level plans developed as part of British Columbia's Provincial Land Use Strategy. The LRMP process typically uses an interest-based approach to negotiating consensus agreements on recommendations to government. It encourages involvement of all levels of government, First Nations, stakeholders and the general public to ensure a balance among environmental, economic and social objectives and to create land use certainty. The role of strategic plans is to evaluate the full range of public land and resource interests and values and to make recommendations on their management.

The terrestrial recommendations of the LRMP will provide strategic direction for operational planning and decision making. Following Government to Government negotiations, acceptance and approval by Cabinet, the province will implement the approved plan in accordance with legislative and regulatory provisions. Strategic level planning decisions will guide subsequent, more detailed, levels of planning.

These recommendations are for the appropriate uses of terrestrial Crown land. Offshore oil and gas resources were not considered.

### **1.2.2 Phase 1 CCLCRMP**

Phase 1 of the Central Coast planning process began in 1996. The planning process involved wide-spread representation from communities, resource sectors, and First Nations. Technical analysis and mapping was provided by the Interagency Planning



Team, consisting of representatives from provincial and federal agencies, First Nations, and local government. Phase 1 of the CCLRMP was completed in April 2001 with the signing of the Framework Agreement.

### ***1.2.3 Framework Agreement (April 2001)***

The Framework Agreement set the stage for completion of the terrestrial plan for the Central Coast. The Agreement integrated key interests of governments, non-government and private sector organisations, and the general public on natural resource and environmental issues on the coast. The Agreement consisted of the following recommendations for implementation by government with the support of all parties:

- Designation of interim land use zones (Protection Areas, Option Areas and Operating Areas, First Nation Lead Areas);
- Commitment to Ecosystem Based Planning and Management Direction;
- Commitment to review and consider amending policies and legislation in order to support the implementation plan;
- The creation of the Coast Sustainability Trust to support transition to a more diversified economy on the Coast;
- The establishment and funding of the Coast Information Team to support the work of the Central Coast, North Coast and Haida Gwaii /Queen Charlotte Island planning processes and First Nation territorial land use plans; and
- The implementation of the Coastal Strategic Plan recommendations presented to government March 15, 2001.

### ***1.2.4 Completion Phase***

The CCLRMP Completion phase was initiated in December 2001, building on the work of the Phase 1 Planning Table. The foundations for the process are a series of agreements signed by First Nations and sector interests with the Province in April 2001 and a Terms of Reference approved by the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management in November 2001. A copy of the Terms of Reference for the Table can be found in Appendix 2.

The CCLRMP completion process has focused on the terrestrial component of the plan area, in accordance with the Terms of Reference. All nine sectors invited to participate in the LRMP process have been active contributors including the identification of a Table representative and supporting caucus membership. See Appendix 2 for a list of sectors and their representatives. The Table met a total of 16 times and over 40 working group and subcommittee meetings were held to prepare proposals and motions for ratification by the Table.

In addition, First Nation groups whose traditional territory lies within the plan area have been actively participating in the Central Coast plan completion. Many First Nations have also prepared their own land use plans which outline their goals and visions for long-term management within their traditional territory.

The Table considered all information prepared by the Coast Information Team, including the EBM Framework, EBM Planning handbook, Ecosystem Spatial Analysis, and Timber Economic Gain Spatial Analysis. The table also considered First Nations land use plans, Phase 1 draft recommendations, and sector interest and values.

The consensus agreements reached at the Table are documented in the minutes and formal motions (Appendix 3) passed at the meetings.

### **1.3 Protocols with First Nations**

Protocols signed in April 2001 between the Province and the Turning Point<sup>1</sup> and KDC/MTTC/TN<sup>2</sup> First Nations were designed to facilitate First Nations involvement in provincial land use planning processes, promote increased First Nations participation in the regional economy, and provide an opportunity for bilateral or 'Government to Government' discussions on land use planning.

Coastal First Nations were engaged in provincial land use planning at the CCLRMP process on a number of levels including representation at decision-making forums, participation on technical process support teams, and in the collection of independent information to support EBM, including two operational EBM trials. The government has supported First Nation communities in the development of their own land use plans, which will in turn shape the final outcomes of provincial land-use plans.

Concurrent with land use planning, the Province and First Nations worked to identify specific economic opportunities in the tourism, fisheries and forestry sectors. These opportunities were advanced through the development of regional economic strategies and through community-level business planning.

### **1.4 Government to Government Process**

Following the submission of Table recommendations, the Province and First Nations will work to resolve First Nations issues either arising from, or not addressed by, those recommendations. The intent of these discussions is to arrive at provincial land use decisions that incorporate First Nations interests.

The Government to Government process is intended to be complete by the summer of 2004.

### **1.5 Social, Economic and Environmental Assessment**

#### **1.5.1 Assessment Approach**

The Table received guidelines for socio-economic and environmental assessment (SEEA) in land use planning from the Province (*Socio-Economic and Environmental Assessment for Land and Resource Management Planning in British Columbia: Guiding Principles – July 28<sup>th</sup>, 2003*).

The presentation indicated that the SEEA would compare a benchmark scenario with proposed land use scenarios. The base case (see section 1.5.2) describes current and projected land and resource management in the absence of an LRMP. This would allow Table members to consider socio-economic information in developing a land use plan.

---

<sup>1</sup> *General Protocol on Land Use Planning and Interim Measures*. Signatories include the Gitga'a't First Nation, Haida Nation, Old Masset Village Council, Skidegate Band Council, Haisla Nation, Heiltsuk Nation, Kitasoo/Xaixais First Nation, Metlakatla First Nation, and Oweekeno First Nation.

<sup>2</sup> *"Enabling Process" for Central Coast Land and Coastal Resource Management Plan (LCRMP)*. Signatories include the Kwakiutl District Council, Musgamagw Tsawataineuk Tribal Council, and Tlowitsis Nation.

The socio-economic assessments subsequently presented considered impacts on employment and economy, communities, and provincial government revenues. Local, regional, and province-wide impacts were also considered.

Interim socio-economic assessments were provided to the Table at several meetings. A final socio-economic and environmental assessment will be done following the completion of the Government to Government phase of the planning process.

### **1.5.2 Benchmark Scenario (Base Case)**

A socio-economic base case was originally prepared for the CCLCRMP Phase 1 Table in December 2000 (*Socio-Economic and Environmental/Marine Base Case: Final Report*, Ministry of Employment and Investment, December 2000). The CCLCRMP Completion Table was provided with an update to this report, reflecting more recent population, labour force and economic information (including documentation such as more recent AAC decisions and CIT products, and changes that had occurred in industry operations and government policies. Information from this update has been included in Section 1.1.3 of this document.

### **1.5.3 Socio-Economic Assessment of Scenarios**

A detailed assessment was provided to the Table in 2001 (Phase 1 "*Framework Agreement*" *Socio-Economic and Environmental Assessment: Final Report*, Ministry of Competition, Science, and Enterprise, July 2001).

#### ***Interim Assessments of Scenarios***

Presentations on socio-economic impacts were prepared for consideration by the Table. In addition, Table members were provided with a one-page summary of assumptions and information (employment coefficients, job multipliers, and stumpage rates) used in the analysis, to explain what had been done and to enable them to do their own rough calculations of alternatives under consideration.

The economic impacts to the forest sector were based on timber supply analysis obtained by the Province from consulting timber supply analysts. The timber supply scenarios reflected possible timber harvest flows over time under different configurations of protected areas (candidate protected areas and other protected areas) and management of the operating land base (EBM design). Combinations of larger and smaller protected areas were modelled, as well as more and less constraining specifications of EBM. This provided Table members with an idea of the range of impacts that might occur under the alternatives being considered.

Environmental risk assessments were provided by the Coast Information Team through the Environmental Risk Assessment.

By December 2003 the Table narrowed the range of alternatives and a set of timber supply and socio-economic analyses were presented that closely matched Table discussion.

## 2.0 Ecosystem Based Management

---

### 2.1 Introduction

A key element of the Phase I Framework Agreement (2001), and part of the mandate for the Completion Phase, was the adoption of an ecosystem based approach to planning and resource management.

In developing an ecosystem based approach to planning for the CCLRMP, the Table was supported by advice, recommendations, information and analysis from the Coast Information Team (CIT), an independent, multi-disciplinary information body. As part of its mandate, the CIT collaboratively designed an Ecosystem Based Management (EBM) Framework and a number of related products (EBM Handbook, Hydro-riparian Planning Guide, Scientific Compendium) that were consistent with the Phase 1 April 2001 Framework Agreement definition, principles, and goals.

Near the conclusion of the planning process, the Table requested that the Major Forestry and Terrestrial Conservation sectors develop recommendations regarding a number of outstanding EBM issues with the intention that these recommendations be brought back to the Table as a possible solution.

These sectors carried out a series of facilitated deliberations through the forum of the Joint Solutions Project (JSP), a voluntary initiative between the Rainforest Solutions Project (ForestEthics, Greenpeace Canada, Rainforest Action Network, and the Sierra Club of Canada, BC Chapter) and the Coast Forest Conservation Initiative (Canadian Forest Products, International Forest Products, Norske Canada, Western Forest Products, and Weyerhaeuser). The discussions through JSP produced an agreement in principle (AIP) on a range of topics. The December 9, 2003 AIP is included as Appendix 4. The Table adopted all of the AIP except those clauses applicable solely to the JSP participants. Those components of the AIP adopted by the Table have been fully incorporated into this report.

### 2.2 EBM Products

Final peer reviewed versions of the EBM products described below are included in Appendix 7.

#### ***2.2.1 Scientific Basis for Ecosystem-Based Management: Compendium and Compilation***

*The Scientific Basis for Ecosystem Based Management: Compendium and Compilation* (Scientific Compendium) provides the rationale and scientific background to the CIT's approach to ecosystem based management as presented in the EBM Handbook. The Scientific Compendium consists of a summary of the ecological theory and data that informed development of information prepared for the CIT or for coastal planning processes.

### ***2.2.2 Hydroriparian Planning Guide***

The Hydroriparian Planning Guide (HPG) focuses on watershed-level planning and provides direction for site level planning. It provides a set of procedures to help design watershed and site level plans in order to manage for a consciously chosen level of risk to hydroriparian function. Those elements which are to be reserved within the landscape are identified first. Precautionary guidelines and risk assessment guide implementation of proposed actions. The HPG is based on an ecological precautionary interpretation of the best available science, and incorporates both active and passive adaptive management to decrease uncertainty and improve management over time.

The Table recommends that all key components of the HPG be incorporated into the EBM Handbook and that the HPG be adopted as general guidance.

### ***2.2.3 EBM Framework***

EBM is a strategic approach to managing human activities that seeks to ensure the co-existence of healthy, fully functioning ecosystems and human communities. The intent is to maintain those spatial and temporal characteristics and processes of ecosystems such that component species and ecological processes can be sustained, and human wellbeing supported and improved.

The definition of EBM utilized in the EBM Framework recognizes that people are a part of the ecosystems in which they live. This extends the scope of EBM beyond protecting ecosystem integrity to include the wellbeing of human communities. The specifics of the relationship between natural and human systems are addressed in the guiding principles and goals of the EBM Framework.

Expanding the definition of EBM to include human wellbeing more comprehensively also expands the policy environment in which it takes place. While the central focus of EBM remains natural resource management, EBM also links to broader policy, planning, and decision making concerned with building and maintaining healthy communities, such as education, health, incomes, transportation, equity, economic development, and diversification.

The purpose of the EBM Framework is to:

- identify key components and requirements of EBM,
- show how they fit together, and
- serve as a strategic guide to ecosystem-based management and the associated development of operational guides.

The structure and procedures proposed in the EBM Framework are intended to assist planners, managers, and other interests in developing and implementing EBM plans to suit their circumstances. The EBM Framework should provide sufficient clarity to distinguish activities that are EBM from those that are not. In addition, the EBM Framework is also intended to direct the application of a wide range of operational planning guides that can be used to implement EBM.

#### ***2.2.3.1 Definition of Ecosystem -Based Management***

The definition of ecosystem-based management used in the EBM Framework is:

*...an adaptive approach to managing human activities that seeks to ensure the coexistence of healthy, fully functioning ecosystems and human communities.*

The intent is to maintain those spatial and temporal characteristics of ecosystems such that component species and ecological processes can be sustained, and human wellbeing supported and improved.

Conventionally, EBM recognizes that people are a part of the ecosystems in which they live. This definition builds on this insight and extends the scope of EBM beyond protecting ecosystem integrity to include the wellbeing of human communities. The specifics of the relationship between natural and human systems are set out in the April 2001 principles 1–9 and addressed in the Guiding Principles and Goals sections of the EBM Framework (see the following sections).

### *2.2.3.2 Guiding Principles*

The following principles are based on the agreements made in 2001. They are intended to guide implementation of EBM.

#### **1 *Aboriginal Rights and Title are Recognized and Accommodated***

First Nations assert aboriginal rights and title to the lands and resources within their territories. Past and current government policies and consultation processes have not adequately recognized or accommodated these rights and title, nor have they addressed traditional governance and decision-making systems.

Negotiated agreements with First Nations provide a mechanism for First Nations, governments, and third parties to bridge this gap in the short term until treaties define a longer-term relationship. These short-term agreements define and enable:

- relationships and understandings between the parties;
- processes and procedures for cooperative planning and decision-making that enhance First Nations governance structures;
- mutually acceptable standards for technical planning and operational activity;
- certainty regarding access to resources and markets;
- mechanisms for sharing the benefits of resource development (e.g., jobs, training, revenue, raw materials);
- development of First Nations economies;
- provisions for social and environmental monitoring and information sharing.

First Nations have stated that short-term or transitional agreements that are intended to facilitate the implementation of EBM are without prejudice to legal proceedings or treaty negotiations.

#### **2 *Ecological Integrity is Maintained***

Ecological integrity is the abundance and diversity of organisms at all levels, and the ecological patterns, processes, and structural attributes responsible for that biological diversity and for ecosystem resilience.

Biological richness and the ecosystem services provided by natural terrestrial and marine processes are sustained at all scales through time (e.g., clean water, species

richness, vegetation diversity, soil productivity, water quality, predator–prey interactions, carbon storage). This includes sustaining the structure, function, and composition of natural ecosystems, including those ecosystems of the land–sea interface and hydriparian system.

### ***3 Human Wellbeing is Promoted***

Ensuring improvement in human wellbeing is critical for effective EBM. Doing so will require a blend of traditional practices, new activities, and new ways of deploying existing and potential investments.

Coastal British Columbia is in transition. Re-adjustment without careful planning and consideration could further dislocate individuals, families, and communities. Risks and opportunities for communities need to be addressed.

A diversity of economic opportunities is key to healthy communities and sustainable economies. Diversification includes both the local development of different economic activities as well as local involvement in different levels of existing activities.

### ***4 Cultures, Communities, and Economies are Sustained within the Context of Healthy Ecosystems***

Healthy ecosystems contribute to healthy people and communities. Empowered and healthy communities are more likely to play a leadership role in sustaining healthy ecosystems, cultures, and economies.

Healthy communities depend on healthy ecosystems but ecosystem health alone is not sufficient for human wellbeing. The implication is that EBM must sustain the biological richness and biological services provided by natural ecosystems, while stimulating the social and economic health of the communities that depend on and are part of those ecosystems.

This idea of entrenching a demand for both human wellbeing and ecosystem integrity veers sharply away from thinking in terms of a “trade-off” between people and the environment. Obviously, any practical application has hundreds of small trade-offs: between interests, between components of the ecosystem, across time, and across space. However, ultimately, maintenance of ecological integrity and improvement of human wellbeing are critical; maintaining or improving one at the expense of the other is unacceptable because either way the foundation of life is undermined.

### ***5 The Precautionary Principle is Applied***

Knowledge of natural processes and human interactions is incomplete and inherently limited, and decisions made in the present can pose unacceptable risks for the future. Application of the precautionary principle means that where the risks associated with an action are uncertain, the proponent of change in the ecosystem should err on the side of caution, and the onus is on the proponent to show that ecological risk thresholds are not exceeded.

The precautionary approach enlists techniques such as risk assessment, cost–benefit analysis, monitoring, and adaptive management strategies.

### ***6 EBM is Collaborative***

Collaborative processes are broadly participatory; respect the diverse values, traditions, and aspirations of local communities; and incorporate the best of existing

knowledge (traditional, local, and scientific). They require broad participation in planning and clearly articulated decision-making processes.

#### **7 People Have a Fair Share of the Benefits from the Ecosystems in which they Live**

Land and resource management decisions usually affect local people and businesses directly, and their effects, both positive and negative, may be profound. People and businesses in coastal communities depend on coastal ecosystems and often have long standing cultural and economic connections to these ecosystems. In the past, the burdens imposed on the local communities by externally driven activities have been greater than the benefits the communities have received. Effective implementation of EBM will address this imbalance.

Diverse and innovative initiatives that increase employment, economic development, and revenue, and also maintain cultural and environmental amenities and other benefits derived from resources, are pursued.

#### **2.2.3.3. Goals**

**Table 1: EBM goals and objectives**

Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Represent the biological diversity of the region in a system of protected areas according to the principles of conservation biology.</li> <li>• Maintain the natural diversity of species, ecosystems, seral stages and ecosystem functions including biological legacies (e.g., bear dens, wildlife trees, snags, coarse woody debris).</li> <li>• Restore damaged or degraded ecosystems.</li> <li>• Ensure that streamflow, channel characteristics, and water quality are within the range of natural variability.</li> <li>• Protect or restore red- and blue-listed species and their habitats.</li> <li>• Protect red- and blue-listed and regionally rare ecosystems.</li> <li>• Maintain viable populations of all native species, including genetic variants, across their range.</li> <li>• Conserve soil productivity and maintain slope failures within natural rates.</li> </ul>
Achieve high levels of human wellbeing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Achieve the health, wealth, and education status required for a high quality and secure life for both aboriginal and non-aboriginal people.</li> <li>• Build stable, resilient, well-serviced, and peaceful communities in coastal BC.</li> <li>• Create a strong and diverse mix of businesses and overall economy within communities and across the region.</li> <li>• Create a strong and diverse mix of non-profit and voluntary organizations and a vibrant set of traditional, cultural, and non-market activities within communities and across the region.</li> <li>• Ensure a fair distribution of benefits, costs, and risks across all parts of coastal BC, including aboriginal and non-aboriginal people.</li> </ul>

The Table recommends the EBM Framework as developed by the CIT (see Appendix 7) be adopted as an umbrella framework to guide future planning and recommends that it



apply to all zones (protection, biodiversity, and operating) and all activities on Crown land within the plan area.

#### **2.2.4 EBM Handbook**

Associated with the EBM Framework is the *Ecosystem-Based Management Planning Handbook* (the Handbook), a multiscale planning guide that can be used to plan land based activities such as forestry, tourism, recreation and mining. The expectation is that decision makers, resource professionals, businesses and local people engaged in land and resource management within the plan area will use the Handbook for guidance in the development of EBM plans. The Handbook provides assistance to implement EBM at scales ranging from territories/subregions down to watershed and site plans. The Handbook also incorporates key elements of the *Hydroriparian Planning Guide* (HPG).

The Handbook was prepared to summarize key technical concepts, planning steps and management objectives for consideration by First Nations and LRMP planning tables. For practitioners, the revised Handbook and HPG will provide the detailed discussion on the concepts, methods and management recommendations for Ecosystem Based Management. The Scientific Compendium summarizes the ecological science underpinning the concepts, methods and thresholds in the Handbook and HPG.

Peer review of the EBM Handbook and the HPG has been finalized and, these documents are now complete. In finalizing the Handbook, the Table recommended that the Handbook Team incorporate all key components of the HPG.

The Table recommends that the EBM Handbook be considered a living document (i.e. EBM is a process, not an event) intended to change/evolve over time through passive and active adaptive management (see Section 6.0). In this regard:

- It is understood that information other than CIT products can/should be considered/incorporated through adaptive management; and
- It is agreed that all changes to the EBM Handbook, arising through adaptive management or otherwise, are to be made on the basis of government-to-government decisions informed by recommendations from the EBM Council.

At present, the Handbook has focussed primarily on forest related planning and practices (verses planning and practices relative to mining, tourism, recreation etc.). The Table recommends that the Handbook evolve over time to address all land based activities and that this be done in a manner that is consistent with the spirit and intent of the General Management Direction (GMDs) established under Chapter 4, relative to each activity.

Subject to the applicable qualifications and conditions in this report, the Table recommends the EBM Handbook (which includes key elements of the HPG) be adopted in its entirety for implementation where adoption is understood to mean (both here and wherever this term is used in these recommendations) the following:

- The Handbook will be used to guide the development of EBM plans, Forest Development Plans (FDPs) and Forest Stewardship Plans (FSPs) in the region;
- Other than those elements of the Handbook established by the provincial government as legal objectives (see Section 2.5), the Handbook is intended to be a guide and not prescriptive;

- EBM as described in the Handbook will be implemented under the guidance of the EBM Council (see Chapter 6.0.); and
- The Handbook will be used to inform planners and decision makers on the key concepts, basic components, and planning and management strategies required for the development of EBM plans.

The Table recommends that the HPG be adopted as general guidance.

## **2.3 Thresholds and Management Targets**

The Scientific Compendium is the document that supports the ecological thresholds in the completed handbook. The Table recommends that the various thresholds and management targets in the completed EBM Handbook will represent an ecological precautionary interpretation of the best independent information currently available regarding levels of risk associated with different indicators relative to different levels of forest development.

The Table recommends that the thresholds and management targets in the EBM Handbook evolve and change over time through adaptive management (both passive and active) (see Section 6.0). Any such changes to thresholds and management targets are to be made on the basis of Government to Government decisions informed by recommendations from the EBM Council.

The Table recommends that the thresholds and management targets in the EBM Handbook (as may be changed over time through adaptive management or through the refinement process referred to in Section 2.3.1) be adopted as the long term ecological goals that will guide planning.

### ***2.3.1 Refinement of Representational Thresholds***

The representational thresholds in the Handbook are recognized as being a central/critical component of EBM. There may be a more refined approach to establishing representational thresholds at the sub-regional/territorial level that is more effective/efficient in terms of concurrently achieving high degrees of ecological integrity and high degrees of human wellbeing. This more refined approach to establishing representational thresholds at the sub-regional/territorial level would be based on:

- grouping ecosystems according to specified ecological criteria (e.g. the habitat value of individual ecosystems, connectivity value of the ecosystems, sensitivity of ecosystem function to reductions in old seral stage conditions, the portion of ecosystems reserved in protected areas, relative frequency/rarity of ecosystems, and the potential ecological impacts of excess levels of mid and early seral habitats);
- developing group specific risk curves and thresholds;
- establishing a range of precautionary targets for each ecosystem grouping based on the ecological criteria as well as the estimated reliability of data (where surrogates are used); and,
- specifying spatial deployment strategies.

The Table recommends that this more refined approach to developing representational thresholds and precautionary targets be developed by the Handbook authors, augmented by a limited number of additional experts under the direction of the EBM

Council. The Table also recommends that the Handbook be amended under the direction of the EBM Council to incorporate this more refined approach once completed.

### **2.3.2 Operational Targets**

The goal of EBM is to concurrently achieve high degrees of ecological integrity and high degrees of human wellbeing. In applying the Handbook, the Table recognizes that:

- there are some thresholds and management targets that can be achieved immediately with limited/no adverse impact on human wellbeing;
- there are circumstances where achieving a particular human wellbeing requirement would result in an unacceptable level of risk/impact to ecological integrity; and
- there may be some thresholds and management targets that cannot be achieved in the short, medium and/or long term without an unacceptable level of risk/impact to human wellbeing - in this latter case, a transition period may be appropriate to achieve human wellbeing.

The Table recommends that where the implementation of a threshold or management target in the Handbook represents an unacceptable level of risk/impact on human wellbeing, the mechanisms for addressing this are the troubleshooting provisions of the EBM Handbook and the Turning Point/KDC/MTTC Flexibility Principle as adopted by the Table (see section 6.4).

The application of these mechanisms will produce a social choice regarding the appropriate/relative levels of ecological risk and risk to human wellbeing that should apply in any given circumstance. The Table understands a social choice to be a decision that is informed by a transparent consideration of both ecological risk and risk to human wellbeing.

With a view to ensuring that high degrees of ecological integrity and human wellbeing are concurrently achieved to the greatest extent possible, and that there is a clearly understood and systematic approach to making the required social choice, the Table recommends that there be a process to periodically establish operational targets that would be used to govern operational activities for defined periods of time. More specifically, The Table recommends that operational targets be periodically established by forest operators as follows:

- a) Any operational target that is consistent with thresholds or management targets in the EBM Handbook, can be implemented without referral to the EBM Council;
- b) Wherever possible, operational targets need to be established in a manner that concurrently achieves low degrees of ecological risk and high degrees of human wellbeing;
- c) Where this is not possible immediately, the operational target needs to be established on the basis of a social choice that is informed by the thresholds and management targets, informed by the impact on human wellbeing, guided by the troubleshooting provisions of the Handbook, guided by the Turning Point/KDC/MTTC Flexibility Principle as adopted by the CCLRMP Completion Table and informed by the ecological risk;
- d) Operational targets that differ from thresholds or management targets in the EBM Handbook are to be referred to the EBM Council, or such other body delegated this

responsibility through Government to Government discussions, for approval based on the foregoing criteria;

- e) Operational targets that differ from thresholds or management targets in the EBM Handbook need to be periodically reviewed by the EBM Council based on (i) information arising through adaptive management and (ii) advice from the EBM Science Team where appropriate.

In applying the troubleshooting provisions of the EBM Handbook, the Table recognizes that these provisions are intended to address the needs of vulnerable human systems that cannot be addressed without a trade-off and that in many situations business interests will have an important part to play in improving human well being.

### ***2.3.3 Transitional Management Targets***

The Table recommends that the following Transitional Management Targets apply while the EBM Council is established. The Table recommends that the EBM Council revisit these Transitional Management Targets on or before March 31, 2005.

- a) **Representation** - Classify the site series into five groupings (rare, uncommon, modal, common, and very common) and establish a minimum representation target at the landscape level of:
  - i) 70 % of the natural occurrence of old seral for any site series surrogate that falls within the modal, uncommon or rare grouping; and,
  - ii) 30% of the natural occurrence of old seral for any site series surrogate that falls within the common or very common grouping.
- b) This approach to representation involves establishing approximately 35,000 hectares of reserves (in the THLB) in these site series groupings to achieve what is outlined in the following table:

**Table 2 – Transitional Management Targets – Representation**

**Current Representation - At the landscape level (hectares)**

Group	<30% RONV	30% to 70% RONV	>70% RONV	Total Forest
very common	176,289	491,511	1,005,617	1,673,417
common	58,209	16,643	49,447	124,298
modal	15,636	10,983	7932	34,551
uncommon	4656	1540	2408	8603
rare	617	427	256	1300
Grand Total	255,407	521,103	1,065,659	1,842,169
	14%	28%	58%	

**Representation After Section 29(a) At the landscape level (hectares)**

Group	<30% RONV	30% to 70% RONV	>70% RONV	Total Forest
very common		665,367	1,008,049	1,673,416
common		75,656	48,641	124,298
modal			34,551	34,551
uncommon			8603	8603
rare			1300	1300
Grand Total		741,023	1,101,144	1,842,168
	0%	40%	60%	

- c) As landscape level planning proceeds, reserves required to achieve these representation targets will be deployed in a manner that enhances conservation of ecological values including but not limited to:
- i) Representation of ecosystems that are rare in the landscape;
  - ii) High value wildlife habitat including wildlife trees;
  - iii) High value fish habitat;
  - iv) Riparian ecosystems;
  - v) Karst;
  - vi) Connectivity for focal, blue and red wildlife species;
  - vii) Unstable slopes;
  - viii) OGMAs; and
  - ix) other ecological values
- d) In some cases achieving these representation targets will require recruitment of young forest where old does not exist. These recruitment areas will be identified in reserves in keeping with the spatial deployment criteria outlined above.

- e) **Red-listed** - Reserve 100% of CDC red listed systems. Variance from this target to be guided by the EBM Handbook trouble shooting criteria to be approved by the Statutory Decision Maker.
- f) **Stand Level Retention** – 15% minimum retention within cutblocks.
- g) **Mid-seral cap at the landscape and watershed scale** - Maintain <50% of each ecosystem type in mid seral. In developed landscapes and watersheds with >50% mid seral in the harvesting landbase, harvest or reserve managed stands to prevent excessive mid seral representation.
- h) **Estuaries (watershed scale)** - Maintain >90% of the natural riparian forest next to estuaries.
- i) **Swamps and Gullies** - Maintain >50% of the natural riparian forest next to fans, forested swamps and small steep streams/gullies with unique microclimate.
- j) **High Value Fish Habitat (HVFH)** - Reserve all wetlands, active floodplains, active fluvial units and high value fish habitat including buffer. (hydri-riparian buffers are equal to 1.5 times the height of the dominant trees). Definition of HVFH is clarified by, but not limited to, the following examples:
  - i) Where fish congregate e.g. where clear water streams enter murky rivers and holding pools;
  - ii) Critical spawning habitat (e.g. larger spawning beds and spawning beds that support threatened or endangered runs);
  - iii) Critical rearing habitat (e.g. small streams that do not freeze over and side channels used for rearing);
    - This definition does not necessarily include all fish habitat.
    - Access provisions for crossings are to be as provided for in Forest Practices Code riparian reserves.

## 2.4 Relationship of the Handbook to General Management Direction

Standard LRMP processes recommend management and planning direction through General Management Directions (GMD), which are developed in relation to the spectrum of resource values covered by the plan. GMDs developed in Phase 1 were used as a starting point for the Completion Phase and they contained a combination of goals, objectives, and strategies for a number of resource values.

As noted in Chapter 1, a key element of the Phase I Framework Agreement (2001) was the adoption of an ecosystem based approach to planning and resource management. This recommendation was accepted by the provincial government and reflected in the mandate of the Table. This was the first time a LRMP process was mandated to develop land use plans based on the principles of ecosystem based management. As this was a new approach, it was not clear at the outset how GMDs developed on the principles of EBM would differ, if at all, from GMDs developed in Phase 1.

During the Completion Phase, discussion regarding resource management and planning was based on two major information sources. First, there was a continuation of the discussion that took place during Phase I regarding GMDs for a broad range of resource values. This discussion took place both in Table working groups and at the Table itself.

Second, for some but not all GMD topics, discussion also took place on the basis of products being developed by the CIT, in particular the Handbook and HPG.

As a result, Table discussions concluded with:

- agreements on a system of EBM based on adoption and application of the EBM Handbook as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3; and
- agreements on GMDs as described in Chapter 4.

Some GMDs provide direction for resource values addressed in the Handbook and contain greater detail than the Handbook provision dealing with the same resource values. In addition, there are GMDs for a number of resource values not dealt with in the Handbook.

The Table believes it important that there be a clear understanding between the role of the Handbook as adopted by the Table and the role of the GMDs as described in Chapter 4. While the intention is that the Handbook, as adopted and described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3, be the planning product/mechanism for the GMD topics which are addressed in the Handbook, it is also important that the incremental level of detail in some of the GMDs remain available to assist and guide planning activities. In this regard, the Table recommends the following:

- 1) For those GMD topics currently addressed (Terrestrial biodiversity conservation, Hydrospheric and aquatic ecosystems, Fish and Wildlife habitat, Access, Non timber forest products and Forestry/Timber) in the Handbook:
  - general management direction is to flow primarily from an application of the Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3;
  - Any additional goals, objectives or strategies contained in a GMD relative to these topics, or added through the process outlined in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8, are to be considered as information to assist and guide planning;
  - Where there is a conflict between a provision in the Handbook, and a provision in a GMD, this shall be addressed by the EBM Council in a manner consistent with the spirit and intent of the Handbook, as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.
- 2) For those GMD topics not yet addressed (Grizzly bears, Water, Communities, Tourism/Recreation, Visuals, Guide Outfitting, hunting and trapping, Mining and Energy) in the Handbook:
  - Management direction is to flow from the goals, objectives and strategies contained in that GMD as described in Chapter 4 or added through the process outlined in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.
  - Where there is a conflict between these GMD topics and a provision in the Handbook, this shall be addressed by the EBM Council in a manner consistent with the spirit and intent of the Handbook, as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

Adaptive management as described in Chapter 6.0 is to apply to all GMDs in a manner consistent with the spirit and intent of its application to the Handbook; and

Any incorporation of GMD considerations into resource management and planning is to be undertaken in a manner consistent with the spirit and intent of the mechanisms and principles for adopting the handbook as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

## **2.5 Legal Objectives**

Following finalization of the CCLRMP, certain elements of both the plan and associated products (e.g. The EBM Handbook) will be established as legal objectives under relevant legislation. In establishing such legal objectives, the Table:

- a) Acknowledges that the provincial government may proceed immediately with the establishment of legal objectives where required (i.e. it will not be necessary to wait until the EBM Council is established for this work to proceed);
- b) Recommends that the establishment of legal objectives in the future be informed by recommendations from the EBM Council; and
- c) Recommends that prior to establishing any legal objectives, the provincial government:
  - i) Provide both the EBM Council and Implementation and Monitoring Committee with a clear description of the process and criteria it intends to use in determining which aspects/components of the recommended plan will become legal objectives; and
  - ii) First review such legal objectives in draft with both the EBM Council and the Implementation and Monitoring Committee.



## 3.0 Ecosystem Based Management Zones

---

### 3.1 Introduction

Consistent with the guiding principles of EBM, the Table recommends three land use zones for the plan area, in addition to the existing Protected Areas. These designations are intended to guide uses of Crown land at the strategic level. Resource uses within these three zones are further defined through the zone definition, area specific directions and general management directions.

### 3.2 Ecosystem Based Management Zone Definitions and Descriptions

#### ***3.2.1 EBM Protection Areas (469,239 hectares)***

EBM Protection Areas are set aside from extractive resource uses associated with commercial forestry; hydro-electric development and subsurface resource exploration and development (see Map 11, Appendix 1). Land use within this zone emphasizes:

- habitat conservation,
- ecosystem representation,
- maintenance of biodiversity,
- protection of key habitats for wildlife including rare and threatened species,
- preservation of special landscape, recreation and cultural heritage features.

The types of allowable activities within each designation are determined by the primary role(s) recommended for each of the EBM Protection Areas. Table 3 provides a summary of the recommended roles for the 20 large EBM Protection Areas and potential allowable activities within each area. The allowable activities listed both in Table 3 and in the management directions in Appendix 5 do not represent the full spectrum of activities which may be appropriate for a EBM Protection Area, but suggest some of the types of activities which would be in keeping with the specific features and characteristics of the area, and the rationale behind the protection recommendation.

All EBM Protection Areas are recommended to be available for First Nation's traditional uses. Areas may also contribute significantly to recreational, cultural heritage and tourism economic objectives providing this is consistent with area specific management direction for EBM Protection Areas (see Appendix 5).

Map 11 (Appendix 1) shows the location of the proposed EBM Protection Areas.

#### ***Area Specific Direction***

Table 3 provides a brief summary of the size, rationale for designation, and potential types of use opportunities for each proposed large EBM Protection Area. Further details on the recommended management direction and potential use opportunities within each Protection Area, including the smaller EBM Protection Areas are available in Appendix 5.

**Table 3: Summary of Large EBM Protection Areas, Roles and Uses**

This table must be read in conjunction with the terrestrial conservation and recreation (BC Wildlife Federation) sectors concerns as detailed in Chapter 7.

P – Primary Role S – Secondary Role L – Some opportunities, limited by primary role ✓ - use opportunity in accordance with Appendix 5 and the definition of EBM Protection Area.	Ahnuhuti Complex	Ape Lake	Clayton Falls	Cape Caution	Broughton Extension	Smokehouse	Upper Klinaklini	Catto Creek	Hotsprings/No Name Creek	Pooley Island
<b>Size (Hectares)</b>	50,660	20,963	5,040	10,574	4,197	37,785	39,088	6,688	22,722	6,592
<b>Role</b>										
Recreation	S	P	P	P	P	S	S	S	L	S
Eco-system representation	P	S	P	S	S	P	P		P	
Habitat conservation/protection	P	S		P		P	P	P	P	P
Cultural heritage representation/protection										
<b>Potential Use Opportunities</b>										
Winter motorized/mechanized (e.g. Heli-skiing, skiing, snowmobiling)		✓	✓							
Winter non-motorized (e.g. cross-country skiing, snowshoe hiking)		✓	✓			✓	✓		✓	
Summer motorized (e.g. ATV, heli-hiking)		✓	✓					✓		
Summer non-motorized (e.g. hiking, mountaineering, canoeing, river rafting)	✓	✓	✓			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Wildlife/nature viewing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Fishing	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓			
Hunting/trapping	✓	✓				✓	✓			
Lodge/resort development		✓	✓						✓	
Harvesting botanicals/mushrooms		✓				✓	✓			
Kayaking/pleasure boating	✓			✓	✓		✓		✓	✓
Cultural tourism					✓		✓		✓	✓

P – Primary Role S – Secondary Role L - some opportunities, limited by primary role ✓ - use opportunity in accordance with Appendix 5 and the definition of Protection Area	Price/ Swindle	Lockhart Gordon	Chapple/ Cornwall	Dean River Estuary and Corridor	Koeve	Kitasoo Spirit Bear	Estero Basin	Racey Inlet/Helmcken Island	Hanson Island <sup>3</sup>	Khutze	Upper Kimsquit
<b>Size (Hectares)</b>	14,019	33,678	22,872	5,071	18,353	90,460	2,322	6,391	1,431	34,504	10,596
<b>Role</b>											
Recreation	S	S	L	P	L	S	P	P		S	
Eco-system representation	P		P		P	P	S			P	
Habitat conservation/protection	S	P	P	P	P	P		S		P	P
Cultural heritage representation/protection	P							P			S
<b>Potential Use Opportunities</b>											
Winter motorized/mechanized (e.g. Heli-skiing, skiing, snowmobiling)						✓					✓
Winter non-motorized (e.g. cross-country skiing, snowshoe hiking)											
Summer motorized (e.g. ATV, heli-hiking)											✓
Summer non-motorized (e.g. hiking, mountaineering, canoeing, river rafting)	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Wildlife/nature viewing	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Fishing		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Hunting/trapping			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Lodge/resort development			✓								
Harvesting botanicals/mushrooms				✓							
Kayaking/pleasure boating	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	
Cultural tourism	✓				✓			✓		✓	

<sup>3</sup> Conservation role and potential use opportunities to be determined through a co-management agreement with First Nations

### **3.2.2 EBM Biodiversity Areas (545,000 hectares)**

EBM Biodiversity Areas are areas where forestry and hydro-electric activities are not permitted but mineral exploration and development are permitted. These areas are considered part of the Mineral Zone of the Two-Zone system for mineral exploration and mining in BC, in accordance with EBM. EBM Biodiversity Areas contribute to strategic level conservation values by being located adjacent to EBM Protection Areas or existing parks, resulting in large aggregations of lands managed for biological diversity. The primary role of the EBM Biodiversity Areas is conservation and the contribution to the maintenance of species, ecosystems and seral stage diversity and ecosystem function.

All EBM Biodiversity Areas are recommended to be available for First Nation's traditional uses. Areas may also contribute significantly to recreational, cultural heritage and tourism economic objectives provided this is consistent with area specific GMDs for EBM Biodiversity Areas to be developed as described in section 6.2

Map 11 (Appendix 1) shows the location and extent of the proposed Biodiversity Areas.

### **3.2.3 EBM Operating Areas (3,077,793 hectares)**

EBM Operating Areas are that part of the Central Coast plan area available for the full range of economic uses consistent with the application of EBM, and defined by general management direction as noted in Chapter 4. Economic activities such as commercial forestry, mineral exploration and development, and hydro-electric development are permitted, as are smaller-scale and emergent economic activities such as tourism, commercial recreation, public recreation, fish and shellfish processing, aquaculture, manufacturing, "green" energy production, non-timber forest product harvesting, and community settlement.

Within the EBM Operating Areas the consumptive use of natural resources is maintained within limits that can be sustained over the long-term, in accordance with EBM principles.

The focus of resource development within the EBM Operating Areas is to enhance community stability and individual wellbeing, to encourage economic diversification and innovation, and to increase the local employment, economic development, revenue, cultural and environmental amenities and other benefits derived from resources.

## 4.0 General Management Directions

---

### 4.1 Introduction

General Management Directions are recommended management and planning direction for a spectrum of resource values covered by the plan.

General Management Directions were developed for 13 resource values and apply to all resource activities within the plan area. Many GMDs are intended to complement management direction contained within the Handbook, by providing additional detail to assist and guide planning activities. Management direction for other GMDs not addressed in the Handbook flow from the goals objectives and strategies outlined in each GMD. All GMDs are intended to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles for making EBM operational as noted in Chapters 2 and 6.

Sections 4.2.1 to 4.2.13 provides GMDs for the following thirteen key topics:

- Terrestrial Biodiversity Conservation
- Hydro-riparian and Aquatic Ecosystem s
- Fish and wildlife habitat
- Grizzly Bears
- Water
- Communities
- Access & Facilities Management
- Tourism and Recreation
- Non-Timber Forest Products
- Guide Outfitting, Hunting and Trapping
- Subsurface Resources and Aggregates
- Forestry/Timber
- Visuals Management

The GMDs described in Sections 4.2.1 to 4.2.13 are applicable in Operating Areas. They are also applicable in EBM Protection Areas if consistent with the definition of the EBM Protection Area, as well as management direction in Appendix 5, and in EBM Biodiversity Areas if consistent with the definition of Biodiversity Area and area specific GMDs for Biodiversity Areas to be developed as described in Section 6.2.

The role of these GMDs in guiding ongoing resource management and planning within an ecosystem based management system is described in Section 2.4. The management directions contained in Sections 4.2.1 to 4.2.13 complement and link with each other and are intended to be considered as a whole; for example Fish and Wildlife Habitat and Terrestrial Biodiversity Conservation are inter-related and need to be considered together.

Objectives and strategies are the fundamental building blocks of GMDs. Objectives describe a desired future condition with respect to a particular resource or resource use. Strategies describe “how” the objective will be achieved. In addition to objectives and strategies, these GMDs provide additional clarification regarding the intent and vision of the Table in the form of goal statements.

There needs to be a clear definition of the terms “protect”, “reserve”, “critical habitat and features”, and “abundance” as they are used in the GMDs. The Table recommends that definitions for each of these following terms be developed by the Implementation and Monitoring Committee in a manner consistent with the spirit and intent of the following and once finalized be included in the LRMP Glossary:

- **Protect** - To preserve an identified set of values. The preservation can be achieved through establishment of formal protection areas, reserve zones, protective management practices, maintenance of representative samples or establishment of management regimes that specifically maintain the value of interest.
- **Reserve** - Areas where no, or very little, extractive resource use takes place, but the land has no formal protected status. They are generally established during the tactical planning at landscape and watershed scales. Reservation can be achieved through establishment of reserve zones, no-work zones, buffers, various management practices or maintenance of the ecological functions of concern. Reserves are intended to be permanent; however they may be modified or moved in response to changing conditions in the landscape or new information regarding reserve design.
- **Critical Wildlife Habitat & Features** - A site/location of specific habitat vital to the health, maintenance and/or recovery of one or a variety of species based on habitat features such as nesting, denning, food source or breeding requirements. Specific definitions and requirement of species' specific critical habitat will be in accordance with legislation and subject to further refinement by EBM Council as informed by the EBM Science Team.
- **Abundance** in keeping with natural population fluctuations and dynamics. The intent is to strive to maintain populations in terms of magnitude, spatial distribution and genetic variety but in most circumstances not to require absolute maintenance of a specific number or individuals.

#### 4.2 Completion of Outstanding General Management Directions

The Handbook is a critical information source for the development of the GMDs relating to ecological integrity. Due to the delays in the development of this EBM product, there was not sufficient time prior to the Table deadline of December 31, 2003 for Table discussion and adoption of the following GMDs:

- Terrestrial biodiversity conservation
- Hydro-riparian and aquatic ecosystems
- Fish and wildlife habitat
- Grizzly bears
- Forestry/timber

In recognition of this, the Table passed a motion at its last meeting which recommended the post-Table circulation of these GMDs followed by sector review and comment. As a result, the GMDs included in this report for the above resource management topics were modified from the original drafts to include only those items that have been agreed to by all Table sectors in this post-Table process.

For these GMDs, the Table recommends:

- a) The strategies required to achieve these objectives should be finalized on the basis of government-to-government decisions informed by recommendations from the EBM Council;
- b) Recommendations for the strategies required to achieve these objectives should be developed/finalized by the government and EBM Science Team under the direction/management of the EBM Council;
- c) In developing/finalizing such recommendations, the EBM Science Team should be encouraged/directed to use/adopt/incorporate/draw upon where appropriate the work of other initiatives dealing with similar issues;
- d) Prior to forwarding its recommendations to Government to Government discussions, the EBM Council shall first consult with the LRMP Implementation and Monitoring Committee; and
- e) The work required by the EBM Science Team to develop recommendations on the strategies required to achieve these objectives should be undertaken on a high priority basis with the objective of finalizing recommendations to the EBM Council by March 31, 2005.

Appendix 8 contains a complete listing of all strategies under discussion at the time of the deadline for CCLRMP completion. These are provided by way of information only and on the clear understanding that (i) they have not been agreed to, (ii) they are listed only to demonstrate the full range of potential strategies under discussion, (iii) the list is not a complete list of the strategies discussed or contemplated by the Table during its deliberations, and (iv) the final strategies for each objective as determined through Government to Government decisions, informed by recommendations from the EBM Council, may include some or all of the strategies as listed in Appendix 8 or strategies that are modified or entirely different.

All of the other GMDs included in sections 4.2.1 to 4.2.13 were formally adopted by the Table, with the exception of the GMD for visual management, which was developed from the visual management agreement developed between the Major Forestry and Tourism sectors, and subsequently adopted by the Table.

### **4.2.1 Terrestrial Biodiversity Conservation**

General management direction for terrestrial biodiversity is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following is additional direction based on Table discussion. It is provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Sections 2.4 and is subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. It should always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

#### **Goals**

---

1. Achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
2. Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
3. To ensure that biodiversity conservation, management and planning (at all scales) is done in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
4. To maintain abundance and diversity of organisms at all levels, and the ecological patterns, processes, and structural attributes responsible for that biological diversity and for ecosystem resilience.
5. Maintain the natural diversity of species, genes and habitat elements across scales and through time.
6. To incorporate traditional ecological knowledge in biodiversity conservation planning and management.
7. Restore damaged, degraded or under-represented ecosystems.

#### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

##### **Ecological Representation:**

The objectives and strategies for ecological representation flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional strategies are provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Designate Old Growth Management Areas representative of forested ecosystems.
- Consider the incorporation of previously established Forest Ecosystem Networks (FENs) in the delineation and designation of ecosystem representation reserves.
- Maintain a significant component of each landscape unit in plant species composition similar to that developed through natural succession.
- Maintain rare forest stand types over rotations.
- Maintain the proportion and distribution of the deciduous broadleaf components of stands within the range observed in unmanaged stands within the landscape unit.
- Where possible retain a range of sizes of downed woody debris, including some large pieces.
- Leave coarse woody debris (cwd) with a range of piece sizes, including large pieces, on the ground, where pre-harvest stands are characterized by cwd.
- Priorities will be set for the development of comprehensive landscape unit plans based on the degree of conflict.



---

### **Endangered and rare ecosystem/species and focal species (fine filter)**

The objectives and strategies for Endangered and rare ecosystems/species and focal species, flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional strategy is provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Identify and reserve key wildlife migration/movement corridors.

---

### **Soils and Terrain**

The objectives and strategies for soil and terrain, flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

---

### **Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK)**

The objectives and strategies for TEK flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional objective and strategies for TEK are provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- A. Improve knowledge and understanding of terrestrial animal and plant species and habitats utilizing TEK.
- First Nations will be consulted in the prioritisation, design, and implementation of biodiversity studies in the plan area.
  - First Nation research into cultural use of plants and trees will be supported.
  - A comprehensive research strategy will be developed to determine the state of terrestrial resources used by First Nations for medicinal, food or social/ceremonial purposes.

---

### **Exotic Species**

The objectives and strategies for exotic species flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional objective and strategies for exotic species are provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4

- B. Avoid the introduction of terrestrial exotic species.
- Standards, controls or guidelines will be established regarding the management of exotic species.
  - Practices such as grass seeding that have been shown to be non - threatening can be maintained .

---

### **Transitional Management Targets**

There are some transitional management targets established for terrestrial biodiversity conservation recommended by the Table. These are described in Section 2.3.3.

### **4.2.2 Hydroriparian and Aquatic Ecosystems**

General management direction for hydro-riparian and aquatic ecosystems biodiversity is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook and the HPG as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following is additional direction based on Table discussion. It is provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Sections 2.4 and is subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. It should always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the EBM Handbook and the HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

#### **Goals**

---

1. Achieve high levels of human well-being.
2. Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
3. Ensure that conservation, management and planning (at all scales) of hydro-riparian and aquatic ecosystems is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
4. Protect hydro-riparian and aquatic ecosystems from the negative impacts of development (industrial, settlement, agriculture).
5. Work toward the restoration of watersheds for the protection of all aquatic species.

#### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

##### **Aquatic Eco-Systems**

The objectives and strategies for aquatic ecosystems flow primarily from the EBM Handbook and HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional strategies are provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4:

- Modification of water bodies maintains the full range of ecosystem types in a condition and pattern that will promote the persistence of the ecological communities and habitats within them.
  - Encourage proponents to identify, map and incorporate the protection of sensitive zones<sup>6</sup> into development plans and approved operations.
  - Utilize riparian management zones of sufficient size to minimize the risk in areas with high windthrow hazards.
  - Mitigate and control the cumulative effects of material introduced into water sources from development practices.
  - Conduct post-development monitoring to assess secondary or cumulative effects from development.
  - Set back roads from riparian areas or utilize alternative methods of harvesting to avoid building roads.
  - Avoid building roads immediately above sensitive spawning or rearing areas.
  - Incorporate timing restrictions in the prescriptions for operations in unstable areas .
  - Provide greater riparian setback for areas which are prone to high natural erosion.
-

---

The following additional objective and is provided for aquatic ecosystems to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4:

A. Designate and protect sensitive and high value watersheds.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and Section 6.3.8.*

## **Lakes**

B. Manage lakeshore riparian area habitat for terrestrial and aquatic species.

- The province to complete a Regional Lake Classification Guidebook (RLCG) that applies to all lakes in the plan area.
- In the absence of fish inventory, the province shall classify lakes, by applying the precautionary approach for lakes having the potential of containing fish.
- Manage lakeshore areas to prevent soil degradation.
- Develop and implement management strategies that maintain lakeside riparian forest habitat values (as distinct from hydro-riparian buffers), including wildlife access/forage/nesting/denning and safety cover requirements.
- In accordance with such lakeside riparian management strategies, reserve wind firm buffers.
- Provide increased riparian setback for areas which are naturally erodible.
- Consider the CIT freshwater classification system in future discussions regarding freshwater ecosystem representation.

---

## **Stand-level retention**

The objectives and strategies for stand level retention flow primarily from the EBM Handbook and HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following strategy is provided for stand level retention and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Wildlife trees and associated "safe work zones" (as described by BC Workers Compensation Board) will be retained in riparian management areas. Increasing the width of the riparian management zones may be required unless alternative management measures can be shown to be effective.

---

## **Flow and Water Quality**

The objectives and strategies for flow and water quality flow primarily from the EBM Handbook and HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional strategies are provided for flow and water quality and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Ensure that water pollutants are below levels that affect people or the ecosystem except where naturally induced contaminants are at levels above this.
- Avoid creating storage dams and out-of-stream diversions and/or operate so that in-stream flows remain within background range.
- Avoid channelling and dyking except where the effect of prior development requires intervention to bring the flow within background range or where lives and valuable property justifies the cost of intervention.

- Develop, implement, and ensure adequate government funding for appropriate water quality monitoring program.

## **Restoration**

The objectives and strategies for restoration flow primarily from the EBM Handbook and HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional strategies are provided for flow and water quality and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Restore damaged or degraded areas arising from prior development on a site-specific basis and restore damage from natural causes where appropriate:
  - Rehabilitation and/or restoration will be directed to those fresh water systems which would benefit the most.
  - Develop restoration prescriptions in conjunction with development planning.
  - Repair or relocate roads that are potential or ongoing sources of sediment or failures into fish bearing waters.
  - Identify and pursue funding mechanisms for restoration.
- 

## **Transitional Management Targets**

---

There are some transitional management targets established for hydro-riparian and aquatic ecosystems recommended by the Table. These are described in Section 2.3.3.

### **4.2.3 Fish and Wildlife Habitat**

General management direction for fish and wildlife habitat is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook and the HPG as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following is additional direction based on Table discussion. It is provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Sections 2.4 and is subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. It should always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the EBM Handbook and the HPG as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3

#### **Goals**

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 To ensure that fish and wildlife habitat conservation, management and planning (at all scales) is done in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
- 4 To maintain habitats for red & blue listed, Identified Wildlife Management Strategy (IWMS) species, regionally rare and focal species, fish, ungulates, raptors, bats, waterfowl and furbearers.
- 5 To ensure local and traditional knowledge is collected and considered.
- 6 To protect and where needed restore critical habitats for red/blue listed, focal and other important wildlife species.

#### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

##### **Red/Blue Listed, Regionally Rare, and Focal Species Habitat**

The objectives and strategies for red/blue listed, regionally rare and focal species flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following strategies are provided for red/blue listed, regionally rare, and focal species habitat and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Recovery plans will be developed, and implemented within available resources, for known red/blue listed/regionally rare species and their habitats by the Science Team and the Province in consultation with First Nations, local communities and others. The plans will be peer reviewed by species habitat experts.
  - Protect, and where needed restore, critical habitats for red/blue listed, focal and other important bird and wildlife species.
  - Ensure consultation with First Nations and local communities and consider traditional and local knowledge.
- 

##### **Fish Habitat**

The objectives and strategies for fish habitat flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following strategies are provided for fish habitat and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- If industrial development results in the loss of fish habitat as defined under Department of Fisheries and Oceans policy, the concept of no net loss over time through the use of replacement or compensatory mechanisms will be followed.
  - Maintain high quality fish habitat in watersheds with abundant salmon populations.
  - Protect and enhance freshwater fish populations and habitats.
  - Incorporate fish and fish habitat protection measures in lower level planning.
  - Conduct fish presence inventories prior to development.
  - Conduct fish habitat restoration and enhancement projects, where appropriate.
  - Improve co-ordination of fish habitat restoration and enhancement projects through:
    - Co-ordinated project review and assessment including local and traditional knowledge.
    - Enhanced communication between agencies, First Nations and volunteer organizations dedicated to fish and fish habitat monitoring and protection.
  - Support monitoring to meet fish habitat objectives.
  - Monitor and adapt practices that impact instream and riparian fish habitat.
  - Sustain adequate levels of spawning biomass and population age structure of aquatic species.
  - Maintain fish harvesting within the carrying capacity of the ecosystem and catch rates within the rate of renewal of the stock concerned.
  - Avoid the introduction of alien species.
- 

### **Critical Wildlife Habitat Features**

The objectives and strategies for critical wildlife features flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following strategies are provided for critical wildlife habitat features and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4

- Designate and protect known critical wildlife habitat features such as nesting, denning, food source or breeding habitat requirements vital to the health, maintenance and/or recovery of one or a variety of species.
  - Ensure consultation with First Nations and local communities and consider local and traditional knowledge.
  - Identify known critical wildlife habitat features at the landscape or stand level prior to resource development and incorporate their management and protection.
  - If a previously unidentified critical wildlife habitat feature is discovered during development, incorporate their management and protection.
  - Minimize road induced displacement and mortality risk within or adjacent to critical habitats.
  - Monitor herbicide application in areas containing critical wildlife habitat features.
- 

### **Connectivity and Migration Corridors**

The objectives and strategies for connectivity and migration corridors flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following strategies are provided for connectivity and migration corridors and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- Identify and protect functional levels of habitat, travel migration corridors and breeding grounds.
  - Ensure ongoing inventory and monitoring of wildlife migration corridors.
-

## **Raptor, Waterfowl, Furbearer and Bat Species**

The objectives and strategies for raptor, waterfowl, furbearer and bat species flows primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following objectives and strategies are provided for raptor, waterfowl, furbearer and bat species and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

- A. Manage forest, land and resource developments to sustain a diversity of raptor, waterfowl, furbearer and bat species.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and Section 6.3.8.*

---

## **Inventory**

The objectives and strategies for inventory flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following objective and strategies are provided for inventory and to be incorporated as described in Section 2.4.

- B. Improve and update inventories for wildlife species, particularly critical habitats for red/blue listed, focal and other important species.
- Collaborate with First Nations and local communities when co-ordinating and conducting new habitat inventories.
  - Utilize traditional ecological knowledge to improve knowledge and understanding of species and habitats.
- 

## **Critical Habitat**

The objectives and strategies for critical habitat flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following objectives and strategies are provided for critical habitat and to be incorporated as described in Section 2.4.

- C. Every 2-3 years the Science Team and the Province will determine the status of critical habitat for wildlife, complete an analysis of how EBM is meeting critical habitat objectives and present this information to the EBM council.
- 

- D. Protect critical habitat for Marbled Murrelet.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

- E. Protect critical nesting and foraging habitat for Northern Goshawk.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

- F. Maintain critical habitat for moose, Black-tailed Deer, and Mountain Goat.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

- G. Protect critical habitat for Black Bears in the Tolmie and other Landscape units where the Kermode phenotype is commonly expressed:

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

- H. Protect critical habitat for Tailed Frogs.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

## **Transitional Management Targets**

---

There are some transitional management targets established for fish and wildlife recommended by the Table. These are described in Section 2.3.3.



#### 4.2.4 Grizzly Bears

General management direction for grizzly bears is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for grizzly bears and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

### Goals

---

1. Achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
2. Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
3. Ensure that grizzly bear conservation, management and planning (at all scales) is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
4. Ensure First Nations issues and roles regarding grizzly bear management are addressed.
5. Ensure that communities' issues are addressed and that proper consultation occurs.
6. Provide safe and non-impacting grizzly bear viewing opportunities (in specific areas).
7. Maintain the abundance, distribution and genetic diversity of populations in each Grizzly Bear Population Unit (GBPU).
8. Maintain the quality and quantity of bear habitat across multiple scales to satisfy viable population needs.
9. Minimize risk of bear displacement and mortality as a result of human activities through access management planning.
10. Minimize the potential for negative bear- human interaction.
11. Manage human activities so that bear habituation does not exceed low to moderate levels.

### Objectives/Strategies

---

- A. **Population** – Maintain the abundance and diversity of Grizzly Bears in the LRMP area.
- Develop a population table, listing target sub-population sizes for each Grizzly Bear Population Unit (GBPU) in the plan area. The table should be developed using best available science by Central Coast communities, First Nations, MWLAP and sector representatives with knowledge of grizzly bears.<sup>7</sup>
  - In GBPU's where the population status does not meet the targets in the Population Table (e.g. Kwatna-Owikeno in 2003) implement recovery strategies to restore the population to target levels.
  - Ensure ongoing inventory and monitoring of population levels.
  - In landscapes important for grizzly bear habitat maintain < 50% in mid seral stage.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to*

---

<sup>7</sup> A forum on Grizzly Bear management is being considered for the Bella Coola Valley. This would be a potential forum for discussing Grizzly Bear population targets.

achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.

---

**B. Forage** – Maintain adequate forage for grizzly bears within managed forest stands by maintaining productive understories and natural levels of downed wood

- On rich and wetter sites,<sup>6</sup> frequently used by grizzly bears undertake cluster planting and manage to lower stocking standards.
- Consider uneven spacing of seedlings and saplings to maximize forage benefit.
- Other mitigation measures include pre-commercial thinning, group selection, selection harvesting, variable retention, pruning, and prescribed fire to limit crown closure within regenerating stands.
- Do not use aerial herbicide applications in highly effective grizzly habitat. Target only vegetation directly competing with crop trees.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8*

---

**C. Habitat** – Maintain the function of and connectivity amongst critical grizzly bear habitats, including functional visual (security) and resting (bedding) cover.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

**D. Access** – Minimize road-induced displacement and mortality risk of bears within or adjacent to critical habitats.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8.*

---

**E. Water-based Tourism and Recreation** – Minimize impacts to bears from water-based commercial and non-commercial wildlife viewing.

- Promote high level of awareness about low impact water-based bear viewing among commercial and non-commercial users.
- Commercial viewing operators are encouraged to voluntarily comply with a set of water-based bear viewing guidelines developed by the province.
- Water-based viewing should only occur after dawn and before dusk.

---

<sup>6</sup> Rich and wetter sites are defined in the CWHms1 and CWHms2 as 06, 07, 08, 09 and 11 site series; CWHds1 and CWHds2 as 07, 08, 09, 10 and 12 site series; CWHws1 and CWHws2 as 06, 07, 08, 09, and 11 sites series; in the CWHvm1 as 05, 07, 08, 09, 10, and 14 sites series; in the CWHvm2 as the 05, 08, and 11 sites series; in the CWHwm as 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 09 site series; and in the CWHvh2 as the 06, 07, 08, 09, 10, 13 site series.

- Viewers should leave the site immediately if bears show signs of agitation.
- 

**F. Land-based Tourism and Recreation** – Minimize displacement and habituation of bears by managing the location and intensity of land-based bear viewing activities.

- Maximum visitor-viewing periods per day will be identified during management planning (required by Land and Water BC for tenuring).
- Encourage cooperative problem-solving between commercial bear-viewing operations and outdoor recreationists (including fishers and hunters). Strategies for accommodating various interests could include separating bear-viewing and recreational activities spatially and/or in timing of use.
- Strategies to minimize bear displacement and habituation could include: seasonal windowing, group size control, spatial separation from preferred habitat, and careful food and waste management.
- 100% compliance by tenured bear viewing operations with bear viewing guidelines such as, the draft Guidelines and Tenure Requirements for Land-based Bear Viewing in Coastal BC<sup>9</sup> or First Nations protocols.
- Bear viewing zones include a single specified site for viewing activities surrounded by an area of closure to grizzly bear hunting that equates to the home ranges of any adult female using the viewing area. These zones will be defined in the implementation process.

**G. Commercial Recreation** – Minimize displacement and habituation of bears due to commercial recreation activities.

- When allocating number of commercial recreation user days, consider use of these areas by First Nations as a priority and carrying capacity. Note: a buffer has been built into the target for user day density to accommodate First Nations activities in high use areas.
  - Allocate user days per km<sup>2</sup> per active season (April 1 – October 31), with 1500 user days per km<sup>2</sup> as a precautionary benchmark, and an absolute maximum of 5000 user days per km<sup>2</sup> per active season. To exceed <1500 user days per km<sup>2</sup>, commercial operators and/or land managers must assess risks to bears from increased levels of use and implement strategies to minimize or mitigate bear displacement, habituation and associated increases in mortality risk.
  - Ensure that user days are allocated in an equitable way between public and commercial recreation users.
  - Consider instituting a “watchman” program to monitor bear viewing activity and associated impacts.
  - Strategies to minimize bear displacement and habituation could include: seasonal windowing, group size control, spatial separation from preferred habitat, and careful food and waste management.
  - Bear awareness education at high use areas is essential.
- 

**H. Air-based Bear Viewing** – No air-based viewing to be permitted.

- Aircraft should stay a minimum of 500m from bears (vertically and horizontally).
  - Inform pilots of flying practices that minimize disturbance of grizzly bears.
- 

**I. Bear/Human interaction** – Prevent bear mortality resulting from negative bear-human interactions, e.g. bears conditioned to human attractants (garbage, pet food, etc.).

---

<sup>9</sup> These guidelines require a site-specific management plan that outlines number of user days, times of day, access routes, and platform location.

- Reduce number of interactions over time by:
  - Initiating programs to educate members of the public and visitors re: low impact food and garbage handling methods, where possible.
  - Educating the public regarding alternatives to shooting to reduce bear-human conflicts, e.g., waste management strategies, trail closure, etc.

---

## Area Specific Direction (See Map 12, Appendix 1)

---

- J. **Access** – Minimize mortality risk to bears related to motorized road access at the watershed scale in the Saloompt, Nusatsum, Clayton, Talchako/Gyllenspetz and Smitley/Noeick landscape units.
- Consult with First Nations, local communities and user groups regarding public road access changes.
  - Promote one-side development i.e., road construction on one side of a valley at a time.
  - Levels of public road access should be managed to be consistent with the carrying capacity for recreation/tourism use in grizzly bear areas.
  - Provide windfirm visual screening along roads to provide security (i.e., do not conduct vegetation management or stand tending adjacent to roads).
  - Strategies to minimize risk of bear mortality could include:
    - Graduated access i.e., increase difficulty of vehicle access as move further away from road origin.
    - Road deactivation, including deliberate removal of bridges.
  - Introduce controls to public access such as gating on any new roads constructed in connected road networks. This could include windowed public access whereby the timing and amount of use is consistent with minimizing mortality risk to grizzly bears.

*There was not sufficient time prior to the deadline for the CCLRMP Completion Phase to complete the work and discussion required to finalize recommendations on strategies to achieve this objective. Strategies required to achieve this objective are to be finalized in the manner described in Sections 4.2 and 6.3.8*

- K. **Population** – Maintain and manage benchmark populations of grizzly bears within the Khutze and Ahnuhati Grizzly Bear Management Areas.
- Designate the Khutze (Benchmark) and Ahnuhati (core) areas as Grizzly Bear Management Areas (GBMAs) for a period of 10 years (the GBMAs can be continued only if the Minister of Water, Land and Air decides to renew).
  - Ensure that activities such as Mining, Forestry and Tourism are permitted in the non-protection area of the GBMAs, consistent with EBM and GMDs, with no additional management constraints.
  - Land based grizzly bear viewing is permitted in GBMAs consistent with GMDs, adaptive management and EBM.
  - Manage the areas to sustain a benchmark (as of 2003), naturally regulated grizzly bear population representative of the Coast and Mountains Ecoprovince.
  - The province to work with First Nations, communities and other stakeholders to develop and implement a management plan for the GBMAs.
  - No hunting of grizzly bears within the GBMAs; the Hunting regulations will be annotated to include the GBMA restrictions.
  - Hunting of wildlife species other than grizzly bears is not restricted within the GBMAs.

- In the case that a large number of grizzly bears become habituated an appropriate management response will be taken.
- 

L. **Bear/Human interaction** – Prevent direct and indirect conflicts between livestock grazing and grizzly bears in the Bella Coola Valley landscape unit.

- Vegetation management permits on Crown land using sheep, domestic goats, or cattle may be restricted in occupied grizzly bear habitat to reduce conflicts with grizzly bears.
  - Locate conservation officers in the Bella Coola valley during active bear season (summer and fall) to address problem bear issues.
  - In watersheds that have highly effective grizzly bear habitat, new range permits will be carefully considered in consultation with users, First Nations and local communities.
  - Grizzly bear habitat effectiveness class assessments and consultation with users, First Nations and local communities will be used at the watershed level to determine where livestock grazing should take place.
-

#### 4.2.5 Water

General management direction for water is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for water and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

#### Goals

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human well-being.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure that conservation, management and planning (at all scales) of water resources is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
- 4 Fresh water quality and quantity is maintained to satisfy ecological need and human use.
- 5 Land use and resource development protects water quality and quantity.
- 6 First Nations and local community issues and roles regarding management of water quality and quantity are addressed in tenuring, permitting and planning processes, including flood protection.
- 7 Water licensing respects First Nation rights, title and interests and provincial water stewardship obligations.

#### Objectives/Strategies

---

- A. **Water Use** – Water is available for First Nations, local communities and economic development.
- Surface water use will be authorized through a licence as defined in legislation.
  - Improve water conservation through wise use, innovative technology, education, and water conservation programs.
  - Water use applications for diversion, storage or use of water must minimize or avoid impacts to downstream users, riparian zones, aquatic ecosystems, and recreation. Magnitude of water use application will dictate scale of environmental assessment.
  - Apply management practices to land development activities to minimize or avoid impacts to water quality, quantity and timing of flows.
- 
- B. **Water Quality** – Maintain natural water quality for drinking water, fish and aquatic ecosystems, FN traditional uses, and recreational use.
- Follow best management practices to minimize or avoid impacts to drinking water.
  - Apply management practices to land development activities to minimize or avoid impacts to water quality.
  - Identify streams/watersheds requiring restoration and encourage local watershed restoration initiatives to improve water quality from natural and man-made disturbances.
  - Water quality in community watersheds will be monitored.

- Applications for development or uses on unstable slopes or within riparian areas shall address the possibility of landslides or erosion that could impact water quality or affect public safety.
  - Minimize and/or avoid the use of pesticides.
- 

C. **Water Quantity** – Adequate water flows are maintained within natural levels (minimum flow and timing of flows) to sustain fish, fish habitat and aquatic ecosystems and to minimize impacts to existing users and FN traditional uses.

- Determine in-stream flow requirements for fish and fish habitat to establish water use limits for prospective water users.
  - Manage the diversion, use and storage of water to maintain adequate in-stream flows for aquatic and riparian ecosystems.
  - Maintain fish passage around new dams or waterworks and fish screening at new intakes.
  - To restore aquatic ecosystems, remove man made obstructions, such as old dams, where possible, in an environmentally sensitive manner.
  - Remove obstructions to increase aquatic habitat where appropriate.
  - Water licence applications must address environmental concerns such as water flow variations, impacts on fish and other species, engineering design requirements, and alternate solutions.
- 

D. **Flood Protection** – Reduce risk to life and property from flooding and erosion in settlement areas.

- Minimize or avoid future community and business development and infrastructure within floodplains and alluvial fans with risk of debris torrents.
  - Any development proposals in these areas should assess risks to life and property from flooding and erosion.
  - Any development in these areas should employ protective measures such as construction setbacks and levels, protective berms or dykes, etc, while maintaining environmental values.
  - Support the use of innovative techniques to maintain environmental values while developing protective measures for settlement areas.
  - Dams, dykes and other in stream works shall be maintained and operated in a manner that minimizes or avoids upstream and downstream risks.
- 

E. **Resource Information** – Hydrometric and water quality information is adequate to meet the needs for community and economic development, and land and resource management.

- Identify and fill gaps in strategic hydrometric and water quality monitoring for the purpose of water availability and allocation determinations.
  - Identify the locations of water users, FN traditional uses, and aquatic resources for consideration in land and water resource management.
-

#### 4.2.6 Communities

General management direction for communities is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for communities and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

#### Goals

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human well-being.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure management and planning (at all scales) of resource which impact communities is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
- 4 Create a positive economic, social and, cultural climate for local communities.
- 5 Realize the socio-economic potential of the plan area for FN, local communities, residents, and provincial interests.

#### Objectives/Strategies

---

- A. **Education** – People successfully achieve a level of academic trade or technical level of education that enables them to achieve a high standard and quality of life.
- Undertake an educational needs assessment for First Nations and local communities to explore reasons for low educational achievement levels and develop programs to address those gaps. Explore links to the LRMP plan where possible.
  - Utilize computer-based technology for long distance educational services.
  - Establish a benchmark to evaluate access and pursue Federal and Provincial educational programs.
  - Establish a benchmark to evaluate access and pursue educational infrastructure, supplies and services.
  - Develop partnerships for educational programs between private industry, public and First Nations.
  - Develop educational programs that include local history and culture to foster cross-cultural respect and understanding.
  - Maintain academic and trade educational programs and services that assist people to meet or exceed provincial educational standards.
- 
- B. **Health** – People are healthy and live long lives.
- Undertake a needs assessment to determine health services required for First Nations and local communities that links to the LRMP plan.
  - Support the development of future health planning process through the regional health authority for First Nations and local communities that links to the LRMP plan.
  - Provide access to traditional food and medicinal botanical sources.
  - Develop health education programs that encourage exercise and healthy lifestyle choices.
  - Maintain and improve access to physical education and community recreation programs and facilities.



---

## Individual and Public Wealth

- C. People and households achieve income levels and benefits (i.e. the national average or better), which meet or exceed their needs and secure their material wellbeing.
- Assist people to develop the skills and opportunity to earn sufficient income to meet or exceed their basic needs.
  - Maintain and enhance employment opportunities to achieve an income level that is as good, or better than the national average.
  - Achieve and maintain national average employment levels in plan area communities, within 5 years.
  - Achieve “no net job loss” or net job increase.
  - Achieve and maintain national average wage levels and employment benefits in plan area communities within 5 years, to be benchmarked every year.
  - Phase in EBM to create new employment and new economy.
  - Identify and ensure continued access to sustenance opportunities (e.g. hunting, gathering, fishing for personal use), within ecological limits.
- D. Region and communities have a stable and diverse economy.
- Provide support for current and future needs to existing businesses including resource manufacturing and processing facilities, that maximize benefits to communities.
  - Develop access in local communities for services for existing and future businesses, including resource manufacturing and processing facilities.
  - Facilitate and develop joint ventures between First Nations, local communities and business investors.
  - Facilitate and develop investment programs that will attract compatible industry and new people to the region.
- E. Region is economically diverse, within and between natural resource sectors, including a more even distribution of employment across sectors, to be achieved within five years.
- Identify and plan for economic opportunities, within the plan area, based on future market and economic trends and that support diversification including value-added facilities and products. Facilitate and develop investment programs that will attract compatible industry and new people to the region.
  - Develop a diversified marketing program for Coastal business opportunities; that includes strategies and resources for implementation. (for example a coastal marketing certification program).
- F. Central Coast GDP is increased by an average of 5% per year. This includes suppliers and workers outside the plan area.
- No direct strategy identified – objective to be fulfilled through implementation of other community strategies.
- 
- G. **Population** - Communities have stable or growing population trends over the next five years.
- No direct strategies identified – objective to be achieved through implementation of other strategies.
-

- H. **Community Spirit** – Communities have a strong and diverse mix of non-profit and volunteer organizations.
- Identify and plan for social, cultural, and volunteer programs that strengthen the community and region.
  - Support the development of volunteer organizations that assist in the strengthening of the community and the region.
  - Social, cultural, and volunteer programs are to be supported through their identification and planning including funding.
  - Provide information on the benefits of volunteerism, community involvement and cultural programs and encourage participation in these activities.
- 
- I. **Traditional and Cultural Activities** - Communities have a vibrant set of traditions, cultural and non-market activities.
- Identify, support and enhance community traditions, cultural and non-market activities.
- 
- J. **Distribution of Resources** – There is a fair distribution of resources, benefits, costs, and risks across all parts of BC and Canada, including Coastal communities, aboriginal and non-aboriginal people.
- A portion of revenue collected from the “land unit” to be returned to the First Nations, resident communities and Local Governments.
  - A percentage of tenures and licenses to be made available to First Nations, resident communities and Local Governments for economic development.
  - Each community within the plan area will develop a target and time frame for capturing a portion of resource revenues generated in their area.
  - New resource use tenure opportunities should consider the socio-economic carrying capacity of existing operators.
  - Ensure there is a range of tenures and sizes of tenures.
  - Increase employment levels from resource activities for local residents and for First Nations.
- 
- K. **Public Process** - Public decision processes are inclusive, democratic, transparent, effective, and learn from experience.
- Develop effective public input process with balanced levels of representation from local communities, stakeholders, First Nations and Local Governments.
  - Have strong regional economic development commissions and effective information sharing among all communities.
  - Resource management and development plans must take into account existing activities.
- 
- L. **Social Services** – Coastal Communities are peaceful and have adequate social services.
- Provide access to public safety and social programs that meet the needs of communities.
  - Facilitate the development and coordination of social and emergency planning within the Central Coast.
-

**M. Infrastructure** - Coastal Communities have adequate physical infrastructure.

**Transportation**

- Local Governments and First Nations to develop a coordinated transportation plan that identifies present and future needs for First Nations and local communities that links to the LRMP plan.
- Maintain year round ferry service to Bella Bella and Klemtu.
- Maintain summer ferry service to Bella Coola, Ocean Falls and other coastal communities.
- Maintain safe highway links to Bella Coola and to Port Hardy.
- Maintain daily air service to coastal communities.
- Maintain marine freight service to coastal communities and activity centres.

**Services**

- Identify and coordinate services required for the Central Coast including fuel, marine supplies, docks, airstrips, rescue and public safety.
- Facilitate the development of partnerships between private industry, public and First Nations to address service needs.
- Facilitate the development of emergency planning for Coastal communities.
- Ensure continued maintenance of and access to community sports and gathering facilities (e.g. rinks, ball fields, community halls).

**Communication**

- Ensure communication assets have appropriate technological standards.
  - Maintain and enhance an array of communications systems.
  - Provide for telecommunication installation sites.
  - Provide local business organizations or chambers of commerce with basic level communication infrastructure and skill development, i.e. for internet access.
- 

**N. Settlement** – Provincial land use zoning accommodates planned settlement growth.

- Complete and implement local planning with the input of First Nations and local residents that are consistent with the LRMP.
  - Identify long-term strategic needs for settlement sites.
  - Identify environmentally appropriate settlement areas.
  - Identify existing boundaries for map reserves.
-

#### **4.2.7 Access & Facilities Management**

General management direction for Access and facilities management is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following is additional direction based on Table discussion. It is provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Sections 2.4 and is subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. It should always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

### **Goals**

---

1. Achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
2. Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
3. Access management and the development of facilities are done in manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives of other values.
4. Provide opportunities to develop and maintain access and facilities for a range of commercial and non-commercial land use activities.
5. Conflicts are minimized between the development facilities and use of access, and the conservation of environmental, recreational, and cultural heritage values.
6. Access management planning is coordinated amongst user groups.

### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

- A. **Maintaining Values**— Cultural, environmental and recreational values are maintained when planning for or implementing public access and facilities development.
- In consultation with First Nations, local communities and user groups identify and evaluate environmental, recreational, and cultural heritage values that can be affected by development of public access and facilities.
  - Development and use of current and planned public access and facilities, including construction, maintenance, and deactivation activities, maintains environmental, recreational, and cultural heritage values.
  - In consultation with First Nations, local communities and user groups, government to ensure risks to environmental, recreational, and cultural heritage values are mitigated when approving a road restoration plan.
  - Encourage the use of mitigation measures to maintain environmental, recreational, and cultural heritage values during and after development of permanent public access and facilities.
  - Appropriate access and facilities management strategies should be in place prior to development.
  - Maintain best management practices in locating infrastructure.
  - Control access where hunting, trapping and guide outfitting activities are a concern to wildlife populations or in order to protect community safety standards, environmental, and cultural values.
-

**B. Access Management Plans** - Public access and facilities are planned and managed for a range of land use activities through access management plans.

- Complete access management plans with First Nations, communities and user groups that provide for:
    - The full range of resource development and user needs including the maintenance of roads for recreation and tourism and other appropriate needs;
    - Development of options for access and facility needs that benefit all user groups;
    - Coordination of access and facilities development amongst users so that future development utilizes existing or shared access whenever possible.
  - Establish access management committees, including First Nations, communities, and user groups as required to develop short and long term solutions for access and facility needs including methods for access control.
  - Monitor and assess access management plans, including road development.
  - In the absence of access management plans, the types and degree of acceptable access will be determined through existing interagency review and public consultation processes.
- 

**C. Long-term Planning** – Effective access and facilities plans are developed for long term resource management and development needs.

- Maintain access for ongoing resource management requirements (e.g. silvicultural activities) and other long-term resource development needs (e.g. mining and mineral exploration).
  - As an alternative to permanent deactivation, consider the use of temporary access restrictions, where appropriate.
- 

**D. Research and Development**– Research is directed towards improving access management systems, and to the development of alternatives to roads for access to resources.

- Direct research and development to improve access management systems.
  - Direct research to develop innovative alternative methods for access to resources.
-

#### **4.2.8 Tourism and Recreation**

General management direction for tourism and recreation is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for tourism and recreation and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

#### **Goals**

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human well-being.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure that Tourism and Recreation activities are conducted in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and that plans are integrated with the objectives of other values.
- 4 Tourism/Recreation, First Nations and local communities participate fully in the planning and the decision making processes involving the identification, classification inventory and management of tourism and recreation resources.
- 5 Provide First Nations and local communities the opportunity to participate fully in the economic benefits of tourism and recreation in their areas.
- 6 Complete the preparation of a comprehensive Tourism/Recreation Plan.
- 7 Promote and maintain opportunities for recreation and tourism.

#### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

- A. Recreation and Tourism Resources** – ensure that tourism and recreation development minimizes impacts to cultural and ecological values.
- Develop access management strategies that minimize impacts to cultural and ecological resources.
  - Maintain the integrity of cultural and ecological sites.
  - Do not exceed the carrying capacity of the cultural and ecological sites.
- 
- B. Special Features** - Identify, classify and protect special features.
- Systematically survey and collect information from tour operators, recreationists, First Nations and local residents. Provide means for the public to submit information electronically.
  - Update maps and data bases as new information comes in and make this available to planners, tourism operators, recreationists and the public.
  - Establish as required, commercial harvesting / industrial development buffers around known special features.
  - Ensure access is available to showcase special features, where appropriate.
- 
- C. Acoustic Quality** – Manage the intensity, production and timing of industrial and other noise to minimize conflicts with tourism and/or recreation users in priority areas identified. Refer to overlapping areas on Map 9 (Recreation and Tourism Special Features) and Map 13 (Visual Management).

- Develop measurable acoustic quality standards and objectives for recreation, tourism, industrial, transportation and other activities through a collaborative process with the assistance and facilitation of the Implementation and Monitoring committee.
  - Until standards and objectives are developed:
    - require development proponents and operators to consult fixed-location tourism operators and work out mutually acceptable agreements on acoustic issues for the tourism season with consideration for established operator; and
    - require operators to strive to not operate noisy equipment in provincial specified Boat Havens and other identified anchorages used frequently by tourists and recreationists between 2100 and 0700 hours from June 15 to September 15.
- 

**D. Tenure and Access** – Respect existing tenure commitments while providing opportunities for qualified new operators and ensuring public access to all recreation areas.

- Ensure boundaries and/or terms of land tenure do not block public access to recreational and industrial resources.
  - Give priority for extensions to established commercial tourism operators where it can be demonstrated that the operators are in compliance with the terms of permits and approvals.
- 

**E. Tourism Resorts and Recreation Sites** – Manage extractive resource developments near tourism resorts, and tourism and recreation sites, with consideration for the needs of each other.

- Inform tenured lodge and resort owners of proposed extractive resource developments, including forest development plans that will be visible or audible from their resorts.
- Proponents consult with communities, First Nations and the Province on resource development proposals near tourism and recreation sites.
- Inform tenured resource operators of proposed tourism operations and recreation site development within the tenured resource operating area.
- Consult with the First Nations and local communities prior to new resort development.
- Identify, classify and inventory potential resort sites.
- Establish effective visual buffers around tenured lodges, resorts and recreation sites through mutual cooperation of the tourism operator, or site manager and the resource extraction operator. Implementation and Management Committee to ensure the interests of other stakeholders are considered.
- Restore and protect special areas near resorts (e.g. beaches trails, wild flower, berry and special nature areas, viewing spots).
- Encourage and promote establishment of new tourism operations in areas zoned with tourism and recreation priority.

**F. Air-based Tourism and Recreation** - Ensure opportunities for air, water and land access for fixed-wing and rotary aircraft within all zoning designations in the plan area except ecological reserves and those designated as no-fly/prohibited areas.

- For guidance refer to the MWLAP Interim Wildlife Guidelines for Commercial Backcountry Recreation.
- In those areas where conflicts between aircraft operators and other sectors occur, consult with stakeholders to develop solutions.

- Use the Implementation and Monitoring committee to identify, classify, and update the visual management requirements pertaining to air-based tourism and recreation as use and social values change over time.
  - Comply fully with restrictions on approaching and disturbing wildlife.
- 

**G. Sport Fishing** – Maintain and enhance commercial and recreational sport fishing opportunities and experiences.

- Maintain a diverse range of recreational fishing opportunities and develop new sports fishing opportunities.
  - Encourage governments to work together to improve data collection management.
  - Government and stakeholders to ensure effective, realistic, and cooperative enforcement efforts with respect to fish, fish habitat, and fisheries related activities.
  - Restore and maintain fish populations to levels within their natural historic range of variability.
- 

**H. Terrestrial Requirements for Marine Tourism/Recreation** – Maintain and restore the visual and acoustic qualities on marine cruising and kayaking routes and at anchorages, camp-sites and destination areas, including recreation facilities such as hiking trails in accordance with zoning map (Map 13, Appendix 1).

- Update inventories of anchorages, campsites and destination areas.
  - Maintain wind-firm forest buffers around identified anchorages (combine with visual buffers).
  - Establish rustic campsites and trails as and when required by levels of use, within the carrying capacity of the area if operations and maintenance can be funded.
  - Consult with affected stakeholders prior to the installation of new on-shore and floating industrial structures in identified anchorages.
  - Encourage the development of facilities for providing food, fuel, beverages, supplies, repairs and related services at suitable locations on marine cruising routes.
  - Refer unresolved issues and disputes to the Implementation and Monitoring committee for resolution.
- 

**I. Wildlife Viewing** – Complete and implement wildlife viewing standards and a code of ethics supported by MWLAP, the wildlife viewing industry and the viewing public.

- Educate operators and viewers in a code of ethics for responsible viewing practices.
  - Identify sites with high wildlife viewing potential.
  - Before approving new sites for wildlife viewing, determine overall area-wide impact on the subject species and the carrying capacity at sites under consideration.
  - Determine acceptable numbers of boats or viewers based on carrying capacity and public safety.
  - Comply fully with existing and future restrictions on approaching and disturbing wildlife from the air land and water.
  - Update the wildlife viewing standards as necessary.
- 

**J. Recreation Stewardship** –Ensure that Parks, Protection Areas and other Crown lands with recreation and tourism values are managed to protect these values, while maintaining opportunities for a range of recreational activities.



- Provide sufficient resources to enable government (BC Parks, WLAP, MOF, Regional Districts) and First Nations to assess and manage recreation values and to improve and enforce recreational use guidelines.
  - Government, local and First Nations to create partnerships with other stakeholders to assist in the monitoring, enforcement, management, and preservation of recreational values.
  - Develop a comprehensive, strategic plan for sustainable tourism and recreation for the Central Coast plan area, including specific direction on management, monitoring and enforcement.
  - Develop cooperative management agreements with First Nations.
- 

**K. Economic Opportunities** – provide opportunities for First Nations and local communities to participate in and benefit from developing tourism businesses.

- Encourage initiatives that will enhance communication with First Nations and local communities.
- Encourage proponents of tourism developments to sign First Nation's protocols.
- Encourage partnerships with First Nations and local residents.
- Carry out an opportunities assessment study for establishment of commercial services businesses to serve the recreating public.

**L. Implementation and Monitoring committee (I&M)** to ensure that the tourism and recreation issues are addressed.

With regards to tourism and recreation issues, the I&M committee is to:

- Establish conflict resolution mechanism between operators and sectors;
  - Identify special anchorages and special features requiring specific management considerations;
  - Address and help resolve visual zoning and other management issues;
  - Recommend management strategies to government.
-

#### 4.2.9 Non-Timber Forest Products

General management direction for Non-timber forest products is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook as described in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following is additional direction based on Table discussion. It is provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Sections 2.4 and is subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. It should always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.

### Goals

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human well-being.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure that management and planning (at all scales) of non-timber forest products are consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with objectives for other values.
- 4 Maintain the ecological integrity of forest ecosystems.
- 5 First Nations and local communities' issues and roles are accommodated in non-timber forest products tenuring, permitting and planning processes.
- 6 A sustainable, environmentally responsible non-timber forest product industry.
- 7 A sustainable natural supply of non-timber forest products for First Nations cultural use.
- 8 Land and resource developments are managed so that cultural heritage features (such as garden plots) are protected from the negative impacts of development or unauthorised use.

### Objectives/Strategies

---

- A. **Sustainable Supply** – A sustainable supply of non-timber forest products is maintained (such as yew trees, cedar trees and pine mushrooms).
- Large stands of identified yew trees may be managed for non-timber forest product harvesting.
  - The province will work with the First Nations, local communities and forest licensees to coordinate the salvage of non-timber forest products from within timber harvest areas (such as yew trees, conks, burls, and cypress cants).
  - Forest licensees are encouraged to employ silvicultural practices that maintain yew trees and other non-timber forest product species (e.g. Single tree retention) by allowing flexibility in forestry prescriptions to encourage NTFP production.
  - Preference should be given to First Nations for yew wood allocation.
  - The province will work with First Nations and forest licensees to identify areas within the forested land base containing tall, straight, cedar trees of appropriate grain and age for First Nations cultural use.
  - Identify pine mushrooms areas with First Nations and local communities and integrate this information into various levels of forest management plans.
- B. **Commercial Use Policies** – Develop policy and guidelines to manage for a viable and sustainable non-timber forest products industry.

- Landscape unit planning and other lower level planning initiatives address non-timber forest products.
  - The harvest of botanical forest products is supported through community driven educational programs, permitting systems and monitoring.
  - Co-ordinate road development and access with harvesting of non-timber forest products and other uses (timber harvesting).
  - The development and use of innovative practices, such as controlled fire, may be used to maintain opportunities for the production and harvesting of non-timber forest products.
  - Options will be explored for the regulation of non-timber forest products harvesting at sustainable levels.
  - Initiate a rehabilitation program designed to restore ecosystems used by First Nations or local communities for non-timber forest products harvesting, in areas where they are diminishing.
  - Promote the development of information systems, including inventories, for non-timber forest products (including maps).
  - Integrate and coordinate activities between resource users to the mutual benefit of all.
- 

C. **Cultural Use Policies** – Develop policy and guidelines to meet First Nation and local communities medicinal, food, ceremonial and cultural requirements.

- Promote the development of protocol agreements with First Nations for medicinal, food, ceremonial and cultural non-timber forest products harvesting or development.
  - Manage areas with abundant supplies of plants used by First Nations and local communities for medicinal, food, ceremonial and cultural purposes for sustainable use.
  - First Nations and local communities harvesting of plants will be maintained on all land within the plan area, including within existing or future parks, protection areas and biodiversity areas.
  - Develop procedures for the identification of areas of importance that provide plant species essential to First Nation interests.
  - Protocols will be developed with First Nations to enable forest licensees to accommodate and plan for use of plant species for medicinal and food purposes by First Nations, including “garden plots” and berry orchards.
  - Initiate a rehabilitation program designed to restore ecosystems used by First Nations or local communities for non-timber forest products harvesting, in areas where they are diminishing.
  - Promote the development of information systems, including inventories, for non-timber forest products (including maps).
  - Integrate and coordinate activities between resource users to the mutual benefit of all.
- 

D. **Pesticide Use** – Pesticide use in areas of importance for non timber forest products will be avoided in order to eliminate contamination.

- Ensure First Nations, local government and communities are provided opportunities to be consulted on the development of pesticide management plans and/or permit applications and that concerns and interests are addressed.
  - Increase use of non-pesticides alternative methods for pest and weed control.
- 

E. **Research and Development** – Conduct research and development for non-timber forest products, uses and markets.

- Catalogue current non-timber forest products commercially available.

- Establish a research and development centre in the plan area (centre of excellence).
- Conduct a literature review of existing research.
- Create an educational awareness program for non-timber forest products.
- Conduct market research for non-timber forest products.
- Lobby Federal government for financial assistance to develop the non -timber forest products industry.
- Research potential cultivation techniques (e.g. Greenhouses) and provide the information to First Nations and local communities.

### **Area Specific Objective: Tweedsmuir Park**

---

#### **F. Harvesting of pine mushrooms is allowed within Tweedsmuir Park.**

- Work through the next Tweedsmuir Park management plan review process to enable the harvesting of pine mushrooms.
  - The province should do a legal review of aboriginal rights of the First Nations rights to harvest mushrooms in Tweedsmuir Park.
-

#### 4.2.10 Guide Outfitting, Hunting and Trapping

This GMD must be read in conjunction with the terrestrial conservation and recreation (BC Wildlife Federation) sectors concerns as detailed in Chapter 7.

General management direction for guide outfitting, hunting, and trapping is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for guide outfitting, hunting, and trapping and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

##### Goals

---

1. Achieve high levels of human well-being.
2. Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
3. Hunting, trapping, and guide outfitting is done in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives of other values.
4. Improve First Nations and local communities' opportunities, social, and economic benefits from guide outfitting and trapping.
5. Hunting, trapping and guide outfitting is consistent with the principles of good wildlife management practices currently employed in North America (Wildlife Society's Wildlife Management Techniques manual).
6. Support continued and sustainable hunting, trapping and guide outfitting activities.
7. Ensure that the consumptive use of natural resources is maintained within limits that can be sustained.
8. Maintain and conserve wildlife species, including rare, threatened and endangered species and their habitats.

##### Objectives/Strategies

---

- A. **Opportunities** – Maintain sustainable sustenance, commercial and recreational hunting, fishing and trapping opportunities.
- Local employment related to commercial guided hunting will be promoted.
  - Opportunities and priorities for First Nations and local communities to access hunting, unencumbered trapline and guide outfitter tenures.
  - Identify and minimize impacts to sustenance, recreational and commercial fishing and hunting opportunities.
- 
- B. **First Nations** – First Nations have access to sustenance harvesting.
- Current policies regarding allocation of wildlife and bird species to First Nations will be reviewed.
  - A sustainable allocation of wildlife resources will incorporate First Nations' wildlife needs for food, social and ceremonial requirements.
- 
- C. **Sustainable Populations** – Harvesting of fish and wildlife populations/sub-populations are within the carrying capacity of the ecosystem and will not exceed sustainable harvest levels.

- Maintain healthy populations/sub-populations of harvested fish and wildlife. Trapping, hunting, and guide outfitting will be encouraged to continue sustainable practices through education programs and adoption of new trapping technologies.
  - Control access on roads where hunting activities is a concern to wildlife populations, in consultation with First Nations and local communities (refer to Access section).
  - All trappers (First Nation and non-First Nations) will be encouraged to forward fur harvest information to the province.
  - Establish and maintain precautionary allocations for fish and wildlife use.
  - Ensure that adequate resources are made available to monitor hunting, trapping and guide outfitting activities and enforce legislation.
- 

**D. Information Management** – Improve hunting, trapping, fishing and guide outfitting information management.

- An information sharing agreement will be developed on hunting, guide outfitting and trapline information in the plan area.
  - Inventory and map existing non-native trap lines.
  - All existing First Nations traplines will be identified and trapline mapping will be improved.
  - Include traditional and local knowledge in inventories and population estimates.
  - Refine wildlife habitat inventories, population estimates.
  - Collate wildlife harvest and fresh water fish catch information.
  - Inventory local hunting, fishing and trapping activities.
- 

**E. Resource Use Conflicts** – Minimize conflicts between hunting, trapping, fishing, guide outfitting and other uses on the land base.

- Significant fishing, hunting and trapping areas are protected with a no-development buffers or special management provisions that maintains areas as agreed to by local users.
- Ensure First Nations and local community issues and roles in guide outfitting, hunting and trapping activities are addressed in tenuring, permitting and planning processes.
- Mapped guide outfitter tenure boundary locations will be provided to land and resource developers.
- Guide outfitters will be notified in a timely manner through their industry associations of impending land and resource developments within their tenured areas.
- The protection of guide outfitter tenured improvements will be incorporated into landscape, forest development and other applicable lower level plans.
- Forest licensees, land and resource developers and hunters, trappers and guide outfitters will be encouraged to work co-operatively to accommodate all activities.
- All trapline opportunities will be made known to First Nations and First Nations interests and needs will be considered when determining transfer of trapline tenures.
- Contact affected trap line users prior to new development.
- Ensure that non-exclusive tenures such as hiking and skiing consider guide outfitting and trapline tenures prior to issuance.

#### **4.2.11 Subsurface Resources and Aggregates**

General management direction for subsurface resources and aggregates is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following represents general management direction for subsurface resources and aggregates and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report. The Terrestrial Conservation sector abstains on the issue of mining in Biodiversity Areas.

##### **Goals**

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human well-being.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure management and planning (at all scales) of subsurface and aggregate resources is consistent with the principles of EBM and integrated with the objectives for other values.
- 4 Maintain or enhance opportunities to explore and develop energy and minerals.
- 5 Increase benefits to First Nations and local residents from energy and mineral exploration and development.
- 6 Improve geo-science databases.
- 7 Foster and support a sustainable and environmentally responsible energy, mineral and aggregate exploration and development industry.
- 8 Promote sustainable alternative energy technologies for local and First Nations demand in remote settlements.
- 9 Ensure exploration and production of minerals, oil, and gas are within the carrying capacity of the ecosystem.

##### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

- A. **Sub-surface resources**– Develop subsurface resources while requiring that negative impacts on other activities, values and interests be minimized.
- Ensure that all lands (except for those lands where subsurface resource activities are not legally permitted) are open for exploration and development of subsurface resources subject to applicable legislation.
  - No Staking Reserves for mineral and placer tenure will be periodically reviewed to assess the opportunity to change them.
  - Ensure that affected communities and members of the public have opportunities to provide input into major subsurface resource development proposals through meaningful public processes.
  - Ensure appropriate design, maintenance and reclamation of roads to minimize impacts on other values in accordance with best practices and mining specific legislation and regulation.
  - Ensure that lands disturbed by mining are reclaimed in accordance with an approved closure plan.
  - Abandoned mine sites (sites where there is no owner or existing liability) will be remediated by industry and government, when and if feasible, where environmental or human health hazards are identified.
  - Reclaim areas disturbed by exploration activities (e.g., exploration trails, trenches) and remove structures as soon as practicable after the work is completed.

- Conduct exploration and development activities in a way that minimizes impacts to critical habitats and wildlife.
  - Encourage subsurface and commercial recreation tenure holders to advise each other of operational activities, in order to minimize the potential for impacts to their respective businesses.
  - Incorporate subsurface and aggregate resource values and interests into landscape and local level planning.
  - Prevent pollutants from subsurface resource developments from entering watercourses and from negatively impacting groundwater resources.
- 

**B. Aggregate Resources** – Develop aggregate resources while minimizing the negative impacts on other activities, values and interests.

- Ensure that appropriate lands are open for exploration and development of aggregate resources in accordance with CCLRMP objectives.
  - Identify/inventory aggregate resources.
  - Minimize noise and dust from aggregate operations.
  - Promote planned, safe and environmentally responsible production of aggregate resources.
  - Ensure that performance bonds are commensurate with projected reclamation costs.
  - Ensure that lands disturbed by aggregate operations are reclaimed to safe and publicly acceptable end land uses that are consistent with local government bylaws and land use priorities.
  - Develop an Aggregate Management Plan where and if practicable.
  - Ensure that affected communities and members of the public have opportunities to provide input into aggregate development proposals through meaningful public processes.
  - Prevent pollutants from aggregate developments from entering watercourses and from negatively impacting groundwater resources.
- 

**C. Other Values** – Develop coastal subsurface and aggregate resources while minimizing negative impacts on other resources, values and activities.

- Mitigate impacts from projects and utilize environmentally responsible extraction and processing methods.
  - Provide opportunities for shore-based infrastructure to support approved upland or marine-based subsurface, aggregate and energy operations.
- 

**D. Other land use designations** – Minimize the risk to values identified by formal environmental and wildlife designations (e.g. Wildlife Habitat Areas, Old Growth Management Areas, Ungulate Winter Range) while allowing aggregate and subsurface resource exploration and development activities.

- Operations will be permitted in a manner consistent with EBM and maintaining long-term biological values.
- Fully consider subsurface and aggregate resource information in the designation of Wildlife Habitat Areas (WHAs), Old Growth Management Areas (OGMAs), Ungulate Winter Range (UWR) and Wildlife Management Areas (WMAs) including access requirements.
- Where other areas exist that can achieve the objectives of the above designations, avoid placing designations over existing aggregate and subsurface tenures and permits.



- Utilize co-operative, flexible management approaches including modification of designated boundaries and the deletion or moving of designated areas if required.
- 

E. **Opportunities for First Nations and Communities** – Provide opportunities for First Nations and local residents to benefit from subsurface and aggregate resource development.

- Maximize the use of First Nation and local facilities and support services in exploration and development.
  - Increase the involvement of First Nations and local residents in subsurface and aggregate exploration and development activities.
  - Increase the training and employment of First Nations and local residents in subsurface and aggregate resource developments.
  - Work with First Nations and local communities to identify legacy opportunities made feasible through mining.
- 

F. **Databases** – Upgrade and maintain provincial public geo-science databases on subsurface resources for geotechnical, geo-hazard, and resource management needs.

- Enhance the knowledge of geology (e.g. through scientific research, geological mapping, geophysical and geochemical studies, technical workshops) to support opportunities for geological resource discovery and development, and informed resource management decision-making.
  - Undertake inventories and marketing studies of potential aggregate and subsurface resources, where feasible, and ensure exceptional communication with First Nations and local government regarding these activities.
  - Ensure that provincial public geo-science databases are easily accessible, available to all and cost effective.
- 

G. **Visual Resources** – Minimize negative impacts to visual resources from subsurface and aggregate exploration and development in areas of high visual importance as shown on Map 13 (Appendix 1).

- Employ exploration methods that have low impacts on visual resources where practicable.
  - Employ operational practices and techniques that maintain visual quality and that implement visual site management, where practicable, in an efficient and cost-effective manner.
  - Incorporate visual resource management principles in mine review and approval processes (e.g., Regional Mine Development Review Committee and Environmental Assessment Office processes).
  - Restore visual quality to natural appearance upon cessation of operations.
-

#### **4.2.12 Forestry/Timber**

General management direction for forestry/timber is to primarily flow from the adoption and application of the relevant provisions of the EBM Handbook as described in Section 2.0. The following is additional direction is based on Table discussion and provided to further assist/inform resource management and planning in the manner described in Section 2.4. The additional direction described below is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as described in the Completion Table Report. It is important that the following always be read in conjunction with the relevant sections of the Handbook and the provisions of the Completion Table Report described above.

#### **Goals**

---

- 1 Achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
- 2 Maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
- 3 Ensure that forestry activities will be occur in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and will be integrated with the objectives for other values.
- 4 Have an economically viable and diverse forestry sector subject to market demands and other outside influences.
- 5 Have a sustainable and environmentally responsible forest industry.
- 6 Realize the potential of the lands designated for forestry to contribute economic benefits to First Nations, local communities, forest licensees and provincial interests by ensuring that all interests receive a fair share of benefits from local resource extraction.

#### **Objectives/Strategies**

---

The objectives and strategies for the forestry/timber flow primarily from the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3. The following additional objectives and/or strategies are provided and to be incorporated as described in Sections 2.4.

##### **Timber Harvesting Land Base**

- A. Maintain a sustainable annual harvest and operationally feasible timber supply over the short and long term in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM.
  - B. Maintain an economically viable, diverse, and sustainable forest sector.
    - To designate the EBM Operating area in order to meet the needs of First Nations, communities, forestry businesses and Provincial interests
    - Ensure that First Nations, communities, and members of the public have opportunities to provide input into forest resource development plans.
    - Conduct periodic timber supply reviews in a manner consistent the EBM Handbook as adopted and applied in Sections 2.2.4 and 2.3.
- 

##### **Economic Benefits**

- C. Realize the potential of lands designated for forestry to contribute economic benefits to First Nations, local communities, forestry businesses and provincial interests.

- Encourage the sorting, processing and marketing of forest products to extract the highest value from the forest resources.
  - Encourage viable, diversified and profitable businesses in the timber and non-timber sectors.
  - Review and adjust as necessary, timber harvesting utilization standards to enhance economic viability of EBM forestry operations while maintaining the full range of economic opportunities for future generations.
  - First Nations, governments, and licensees to work cooperatively to develop and sustain viable forestry business opportunities.
  - Encourage diverse and innovative forest products that increase the employment, economic development, revenue, cultural and environmental amenities and other benefits derived from forest resources.
- 

D. Promote tenure allocations that foster stability for forest development opportunities and that maximize potential benefits for First Nations, communities, forest industry and the province.

- Adjust Forest tenure and chart allocation as required based on the land use zone map and LRMP resource management recommendations including community forest interests.
- Accommodate new tenure and existing holders in a fair and equitable manner.
- First Nations and local community issues and roles must be addressed in forestry tenuring and allocation, permitting, policy and planning processes.
- Promote timely establishment of First Nation and community tenures.

### **Cost Efficiency and Incentive Programs**

E. Create incentive programs to encourage investment and innovations by the forest industry.

F. Ensure forest activities at all scales is done in a cost-effective manner.

G. Ensure that the full cost of implementing EBM is adequately covered by the stumpage system or through other funding mechanisms.

- Forest operations will incorporate innovative technology and planning when developing lower level plans.
  - Continue to support institutional changes needed to adapt to market fluctuations and changing customer needs.
  - When implementing landscape level and operational planning, minimize risk to existing forest infrastructure and silviculture investments.
  - Assess the economic viability of timber harvesting opportunities and integrate with EBM planning at all scales.
  - Do more with less; prioritize business and economic strategies based on quality, adding value and improving efficiency of utilization of raw materials.
- 

H. **Silviculture Practices** - Maintain or enhance the health and productivity of the forest harvesting land base.

- Allocate appropriate funding to reforest the backlogged Not Satisfactorily Restocked (NSR) areas where practicable.
- Sites will be reforested with a mix of ecologically appropriate tree species, to minimize risk of quality loss through pest or mechanical damage.

- Rehabilitate or restore areas degraded by past forest activities.
  - Enhance timber production through silviculture and management practices that increase stand yields and values.
- I. **Research and Inventories** - Research and development will be directed towards improving forest practices and providing for a broader range of forest products.
- Allocate appropriate funding to effectively address research needs for implementation of EBM.
  - Adaptive management, as referred to in Section 6 of the LRMP document, can be used to test and improve forest operations.
  - Encourage innovative technology and planning to increase forest productivity and the operability of the forest land base.
- 

#### **Community Area-based Tenures -**

- J. Establish area based community forest tenures that are representative of a land base that will contribute to the long term economic and human well being of the Central Coast people through, but not exclusive to:
- a. Forest harvesting,
  - b. Manufacturing,
  - c. Value-added product development initiatives.
- Province to work with local communities and First Nations of the Central Coast to identify area based tenure opportunities.
- 

#### **Visual Resources-**

- K. Minimize negative impacts to visual resources in accordance with Section 4.2.13.

#### 4.2.13 Visuals Management

General management direction for visuals management is not specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook. The following are based on, and are in accordance with, the Major Forestry and Tourism Sectors' Visual Management agreement adopted by the Table on November 26, 2003, and represents general management direction for visuals management and is to be incorporated and implemented as provided for in Section 2.4. More specifically, the following is understood to be subject to both adaptive management and the principles and mechanisms for making EBM operational as generally described in Chapters 2 and 6 of the Completion Table Report.

### Goals

---

1. To achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
2. To maintain the ecological integrity of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater ecosystems.
3. To ensure that visual management is done in a manner that is consistent with the principles of EBM and is integrated with the objectives for other values.
4. To maintain visual quality that will permit Tourism and Public Recreation to continue to meet their needs while Forestry and other industrial development will not be excessively constrained.
5. To have a process in place for determining, in spatial detail: the visual modification permitted, modifications that may be proposed from time to time; the extension, or reduction, of the visual zoning areas designated on the zoning map.
6. To have a program in place for restoring the visual quality of priority scenic areas that have been degraded by past development activity.
7. To have processes in place for monitoring and conflict resolution on visual management issues.

### Objectives/Strategies

---

**A. Visual Management Zones:** To achieve the required visual quality of visually important areas, four visual management zones will be established as shown on Map 13 and described in Table 4 below. These will replace in the Plan area the current Visual Quality Class (VQO) system used by the province.

- Implementation and Monitoring committee will oversee and ensure implementation of visual management in accordance with spirit and intent of Visual Management Agreement.
- Tourism and forestry sector to establish a joint committee that would:
  - Manage the successful implementation of both the visual management regime, and
  - Development of a joint marketing support effort to customers of both sectors.
- Visual design principles, including visually effective green up periods will be applied in visual zones.
- Land and Water BC to inform new tourism tenure applicants of the visual zoning system and how this system applies in the visual and non visual zone areas.
- Forestry infrastructure will be designed to achieve minimal impact on visual quality using, where necessary, innovative designs.
- In the Wild zone, maintain continuous and effective shoreline buffer (while still permitting careful installation of shoreline facilities and access infrastructure like log dumps that are designed to

minimize visual impacts). Low impact, not visually apparent selection hand logging permitted along shoreline.

- In the Natural Variability and Landscape Forestry zone, continuous shoreline buffer with minor gaps maintained. Low impact selection hand logging and limited, water based highlead logging permitted along shoreline.
  - Buffer strips will be designed to be as effectively windproof as possible. Continuous buffer strips, with minor gaps, will be maintained along all marine shorelines and some freshwater and brackish water shorelines in the four visual zones shown on Map 13. Buffer strips will be designed to be as windfirm as possible. Implementation and monitoring committee to develop visual prescriptions for significant non-commercial facilities and sites, such as cultural sites, high use anchorages and campsites and special features in keeping with the objectives of visual management zone.
  - Emphasize the minimizing of foreground impacts while accepting greater alteration in background viewsapes.
  - Visual management requirements do not apply in areas outside the visual zones.
  - The exact location of visual zone boundaries to be determined as per visible area of the viewscape.
- 

**B. Visual Restoration:** Restore visual quality in priority areas within zones as shown on Map 13, which have been degraded by past development activity, over time to the visual quality prescribed for the zone.

- Identify those areas or sites where the existing visual condition, due to past development activity is not consistent with the visual prescription shown in Table 4 for that zone.
  - Prioritize these areas based on the severity of the impact and the significance of the area to tourism and recreation and target these for restoration over time according to their priority rankings.
  - Conduct restoration in association with new development or alteration proposals where practical.
- 

**C. Implementation:** Ensure that implementation of the Visual Management Zones will be monitored by the LRMP Implementation and Monitoring Committee, and any disputes that may arise will be settled effectively by the Implementation and Monitoring Committee taking full account of the zoning and the needs and interests of all affected stakeholders.

- The implementation of the Visual Management Zones will be monitored by the LRMP Implementation Committee which will report on the status of the visual quality in the zones identified on Map 13 on a regular basis to affected stakeholders and to the public.
  - The Implementation and Monitoring committee strive to resolve disputes that may arise among stakeholders to the satisfaction of the stakeholders and the statutory decision makers.
  - Disputes that cannot be resolved at this level will be referred to the higher level dispute resolution authority.
- 

**D. Visual Zone Amendments:** The extent and location of Visual zone areas may be modified, in accordance with the zoning categories depending on changing tourism, recreation and forest use in the future.

- The Implementation and Monitoring committee (section 6.2) may recommend the addition, reduction or extension of Visual Zone areas that meet the criteria for such zones, in consultation with affected stakeholders. Revision to the visual zones requires a sound rationale and thorough vetting with stakeholders through a process specified by the Implementation and Monitoring Committee.
  - Efforts will be made to encourage and promote new tourism and recreation developments in areas zoned with tourism and recreation priority.
-

E. **Area-Specific Agreements** – The following site-specific clarifications are adopted:

- **Broughton Wild Zone:**
  - no operating windows are imposed on Interfor's Scott Cove and Viner sound logging operations.
  - Existing 'category A' blocks in Weyerhaeuser's operations can proceed according to plan. Wild zone standards will be applied to new planning. A temporary working group will be formed by the Implementation and Monitoring committee to review and recommend solutions of any issues related to the planned developments on west Harbledown Island.
- **Rippon Island:** This Island is within the Wild Zone designation; however, current harvesting plans will proceed in accordance with the Forest Development Plan. Tourism operators will work with the Oweekeno Nation to define the long term visual management approach for this area.
- **Continuous effective stream- side buffers** - The implementation committee may identify selected lakes, rivers and streams of importance to Tourism and Recreation where continuous effective stream-side buffers will be maintained along the banks. e.g. the Klinaklini and Wakeman Rivers.
- Specific agreements on visuals management that have been reached on areas peripheral to the following Candidate Protection Areas will be honoured:
  - Forward Harbour
  - Estero Basin
  - Cape Caution

**Visuals Management Examples**

Appendix 6 provides examples to further defines the 'look' of the different zones by showing the same landscapes with different levels of acceptable alterations.

**Table 4: Visual Management Zone Descriptions and Prescriptions**

Visual Zone	General Objective	Alteration Guideline	Max Alteration	Management Standards
<b>Wild Zone</b>	The intention of this zone is to ensure the perception of wildness. This means that a wild scenic experience is sought whereby visually unaltered landscapes predominate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Very high proportion of landscape continuum in a wild appearance condition.</li> <li>• Low proportion of landscape continuum in very carefully altered visual state.</li> <li>• Innovative, visually sensitive harvesting techniques are encouraged.</li> </ul>	2%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment using digital terrain modelling to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Maintain continuous and effective shoreline buffer (while still permitting careful installation of shoreline facilities and access infrastructure like log dumps that are designed to minimize visual impacts). Low impact, not visually apparent selection hand logging permitted along shoreline.</li> <li>• Intention is to maintain the visual experience over time. To ensure this, visually effective green-up periods will be implemented and monitored to achieve the General Objective of the zone.</li> <li>• Agreement between the forestry and tourism operators will be established for logging operations between June 15 – September 15.</li> </ul>
<b>Natural Variability Zone</b>	Visual alterations in keeping with natural visual experience where activities blend with landscape and do not readily alter visual experience.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High proportion of landscape continuum in naturally appearing condition.</li> <li>• Low proportion of landscape continuum in carefully altered visual state.</li> </ul>	5%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Continuous shoreline buffer with minor gaps maintained. Low impact selection hand logging and limited, water based highlead logging permitted along shoreline.</li> <li>• Practical timing windows for active logging operations may be established in consultation with tourism operators.</li> </ul>
<b>Landscaped Forestry Zone</b>	Aesthetically pleasing scenic experience where activities are evident but subordinate. Design of alterations to create impression of careful and respectful land use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Majority of landscape continuum in naturally appearing condition.</li> <li>• Low proportion of landscape continuum in readily visible but carefully altered visual state.</li> <li>• Development evident throughout zone but subordinate.</li> </ul>	8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessments to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Continuous shoreline buffer with minor gaps maintained. Low impact selection hand logging and limited, water based highlead logging permitted along shoreline.</li> </ul>
<b>Special Viewscape</b>	Manage specified facility based viewscape to maintain or improve visual quality.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain or improve visual quality through time.</li> <li>• Establishment of specific activities within viewscape to be done collaboratively with the agreement of operators</li> </ul>	By agreement based on existing level of disturbances of the forest in the facility viewscape,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment using digital terrain modelling to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Involve the interested stakeholder in the development of the visual design prescription.</li> <li>• Agreement between the forestry and tourism operators will be established for logging operations between June 15 -September 15.</li> </ul>



## 5.0 Additional Table Recommendations

---

### 5.1 Introduction

Below are additional consensus recommendations from the Table to the two governments. In general, these recommendations result from Table discussion of issues which, while either beyond the scope of LRMP planning or not easily expressed in zoning or management provisions, are recognized as important to resource management and/or land use zoning. The following recommendations are presented for consideration.

### 5.2 Forest Tenures

Given the new land use designations coming from the LRMP and subject to Government to Government negotiations and the creation and allocation of new, First Nation and community forest tenure, it is expected that tenure/chart allocation will require adjustment and reorganization.

New tenure and existing holders will have to be accommodated on the land base in a fair and equitable manner.

Therefore, the Table recommends that government ensures community forestry interests are addressed in this reorganization and allocation of operating areas.

The Table supports area based forest tenure, representative of a land base that will contribute to the long term economic and human well being of Inner Central Coast people through, but not exclusive to forest harvesting, manufacturing, and value added product development initiatives.

### 5.3 Cost of Ecosystem Based Management

The added cost of EBM will be fully recognized either as a cost allowance in the current appraisal system or as recognized cost under the Market Pricing System.

### 5.4 Funding First Nation Land Use Plans

The Table representatives support the need of the member Nations of the KDC/MTTC/TN to access funds from the Province for land use plans.

### 5.5 CCLRMP Completion Table Expectations

Whereas the recommendations of the Table are based on certain expectations, we anticipate that adoption of our recommendations will:

- enhance the ecological, economic and social conditions of the region;
- lead to greater stability in the forest sector in the region;
- improve investment in the region in all sectors;
- see markets for tourism, forestry, mining, and other products respond positively to these developments now and into the future.

The Table participants commit to ensuring that these expectations are met.



## 6.0 Implementation, Monitoring and Flexibility

---

### 6.1 Introduction

The successful achievement of the CCLRMP table recommendations is dependent on the following key components;

- CCLRMP Implementation and Monitoring, and
- Ecosystem Based Management Implementation and Monitoring through adaptive Management and flexibility.

### 6.2 CCLRMP Implementation and Monitoring

The Table recommends the establishment of an Implementation and Monitoring Committee, composed of interested representatives from each sector involved in the CCLRMP Completion Table. This committee will have the following responsibilities:

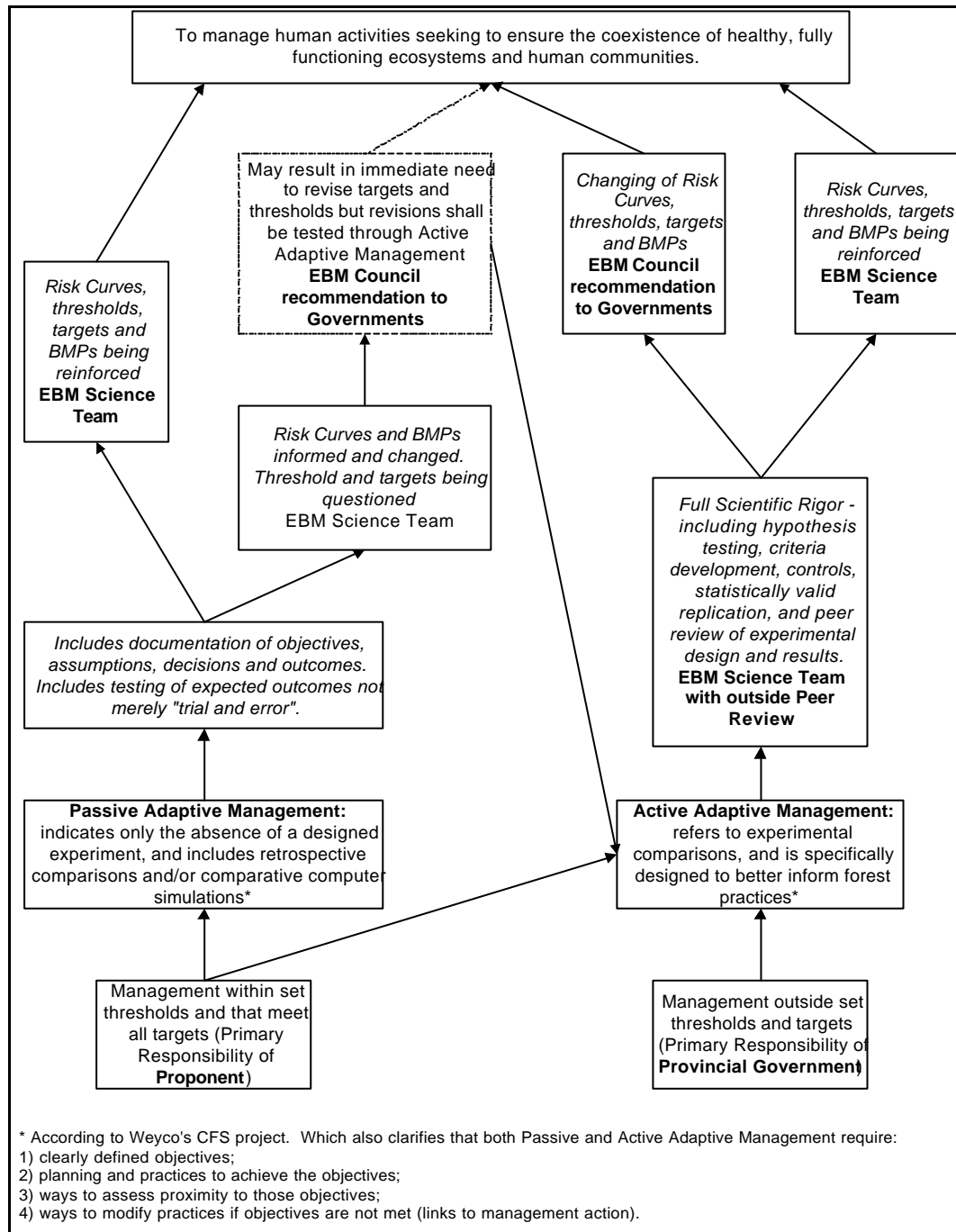
- Actively promote and pursue implementation of the final plan by the Province, First Nations, communities, tenure holders, operators and stakeholders;
- Review progress of the implementation of the CCLRMP;
- Establish area specific GMDs for the EBM Biodiversity Areas;
- Report to governments and the public through the EBM Council and to directly affected stakeholders;
- Support public involvement processes related to implementation;
- Make recommendations to the EBM Council on adaptive management;
- Recommend watershed restoration priorities;
- Recommend changes, updates or revisions to the CCLRMP;
- Provide the EBM Council with input on additional strategies; and
- Assist with removing obstacles to implementation and conflict resolution.

### 6.3 Ecosystem Based Management Implementation

#### ***6.3.1 Adaptive Management***

Ecosystem based management contemplates significant change to planning and practices associated with forest development. It relies on a high degree of cooperation among managers and proponents, ongoing learning and the methodical application of knowledge, data and science. EBM is a process that will be implemented in stages as capacity and knowledge increases through an adaptive management approach. Adaptive management is recommended as illustrated in the flowchart attached as Figure 1.

**Figure 1 Adaptive Management Flowchart**



The Table recommends that an EBM Council be established which will have the primary responsibility of overseeing the ongoing development and implementation of EBM in a transparent and accountable fashion. In addition, the Table recommends the establishment of an EBM Science Team which will report to the Council.

The Table recommends that adaptive management (passive and active):

- is guided by the technical direction on adaptive management as set out by the EBM Science Team;
- addresses the adaptive management criteria and research priorities of the EBM Council, though individual operators may also define additional research priorities to be considered through adaptive management; and
- requires long-term commitment and adequate resources.

### **6.3.2 EBM Council Mandate**

The EBM Council is the steward of EBM as it is applied in the Central Coast plan area. The Council oversees the ongoing development and implementation of EBM in a transparent and accountable manner.

The EBM Science Team is a technically oriented body required to develop, collect and synthesize scientifically and technically rigorous information regarding EBM implementation and adaptive management. It makes recommendations to inform the decisions of the EBM Council.

The decisions and recommendations of the EBM Council do not prejudice the rights, title or legal powers of the First Nations' or provincial governments. The decisions of the EBM Council do not fetter the provincial or First Nations' governments. The EBM Council will recognize the autonomy of each First Nation.

The EBM Council will be set up by an agreement between the First Nations of the region and the Province.

Recognizing that the intent is to establish the EBM Council and EBM Science Team as permanent bodies, secure funding for an initial period of 5 years is required to ensure effective EBM implementation. After 3 years, the EBM Council will be reviewed to identify means of enhancing its effectiveness.

### **6.3.3 EBM Council Membership**

The EBM Council will consist of 7 members:

- Three from First Nations, of whom one will be a co-chair
- One representing the province, who will also be a co-chair
- One representing a conservation perspective
- One representing a business perspective
- One representing a community perspective

Representatives on the Council, other than those of the province and the First Nations, will be appointed from a list of nominees made on the basis of knowledge of and a commitment to EBM. Members will be assigned responsibilities for representing and providing liaison with other appropriate sectors within the present LRMP (or their successors).

#### **6.3.4 EBM Council Roles**

The roles of the EBM Council are to:

- 1 Establish an EBM Science Team that will inform the decision making of the Council.
- 2 Make decisions regarding the refinement, implementation and practice of EBM to maintain ecological integrity and achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
- 3 Receive and act upon recommendations and reports from the EBM Science Team.
- 4 Assess trade-off proposals in accordance with the EBM Handbook (Handbook Section 7.5) and the “Flexibility Management Policy Related to EcosystemBased Management” Coastal First Nations – Turning Point Initiative and Kwakiutl District Council/Musgamagw Tsawataineuk Tribal Council / Tlowitsis Nation (Section 6.4).
- 5 Manage information, including warehousing of, and access to, databases, and gather and distribute new information on EBM.
- 6 Set benchmarks and thresholds for human wellbeing and ecological integrity, based on the best available science.
- 7 Recommend management targets and operational targets to the governments.
- 8 Ensure the effectiveness of monitoring and implementation programs.
- 9 Establish priorities and requirements for adaptive management programs/initiatives and ensure their credibility and effective implementation.
- 10 Receives and acts upon adaptive management plans.
- 11 Maintain transparency through public reporting and other means with respect to:
  - decisions of the Council;
  - recommendations to governments;
  - progress on EBM implementation and practice;
  - recommendations of the EBM Science Team;
  - improvements in knowledge; and
  - other relevant matters.
- 12 Prepare annual reports on achievement of EBM goals.

#### **6.3.5 EBM Council Procedures**

Recognizing that EBM is a collaborative process, the Council should strive for unanimity in decision-making. When unanimity is not possible, decisions of the Council will require unanimity less one vote.

In the event that one of the governments is in disagreement with a decision, they have the option of invoking a Government to Government dispute resolution procedure.

Council meetings are open to the public.

### **6.3.6 EBM Science Team**

The EBM Science Team is a technically oriented body required to develop, collect and synthesize scientifically and technically rigorous information regarding EBM implementation and adaptive management. It makes recommendations to inform the EBM Council.

The mandate of the EBM Science Team is to provide transparent, independent and rigorous scientific and technical recommendations and advice to guide the decision-making of the EBM Council. EBM Science Team products are available to interested parties.

The EBM Science Team is an independent body of practitioners, scientists and other specialists appointed by and reporting to the EBM Council. The combined expertise of the EBM Science Team will address ecological integrity (e.g., forest ecology, terrain stability, hydrology, riparian ecosystems, conservation biology, traditional ecological knowledge), human wellbeing (e.g., socio-economics, sociology, anthropology) and the design and application of adaptive management programs.

The following criteria will be considered in membership selection by the EBM Council:

- Knowledge and experience relevant to the Coast;
- An academic degree; equivalent professional qualification; and/or demonstrated practical experience;
- Contribution to the published literature in their field of specialty and/or publication of competent technical reports based on field work and assessments;
- Recognition by their peers and/or community as an authority in their field.

### **6.3.7 EBM Science Team Roles**

- 1 Develop technical directives and recommend research priorities for adaptive management.
- 2 Review and approve active and passive Adaptive Management Plans.
- 3 Assist in the development of best management practices and their assessment according to ecological and economic criteria.
- 4 Monitor key indicators of EBM performance.
- 5 Gather new scientific information relevant to EBM.
- 6 Improve understanding of the interaction between human and ecological wellbeing.
- 7 Analyze and summarize results of adaptive management, monitoring, and new scientific information and develop reports and recommendations for consideration by the EBM Council.
- 8 Provide analysis and advice to the EBM Council on refinements and changes to EBM.

### **6.3.8 Recommended Initial Focus of the EBM Science team**

The initial focus of the EBM Science Team should be on:

- Refining the risk curves, thresholds and management targets in the EBM Handbook;

- Developing and refining benchmarks through adaptive management;
- Improving the scientific basis for the spatial distribution of retention and reserves.

In addition, as directed in Section 4.2, it is recommended that the EBM Science Team develop recommendations on the following with the objective of finalizing recommendations to the EBM Council on a high priority basis by March 31, 2005:

- Develop species specific management recommendations (including critical habitat identification) for raptor, waterfowl, furbearer, bat species, marbled murrelets, Northern Goshawk, moose, deer, goats, Kermode Bears, tailed frog and grizzly bears);
- Identification of watersheds suitable for adaptive management and pilot projects;
- Identification of high value and sensitive watersheds within the plan area;
- Identification of restoration priorities.

## 6.4 Flexibility

Flexibility is inherent within the EBM Handbook through the allowance for differing ecological risk, and therefore greater economic flexibility, at lower planning scales (site and watershed level). Where the appropriate application of that flexibility still results in the potential for unacceptable social, cultural or economic impacts, the Handbook provides a 'troubleshooting' mechanism (section 7.5 of the Handbook) to develop a resolution that is economically, socially and ecologically acceptable, and where trade-offs are explicit.

In addition, the Table has adopted the Turning Point/KDC/MTTC Flexibility Principle for further guidance on the application of flexibility as outlined below.

The following conditions must be met to achieve approval to move beyond the EBM targets. A plan must be developed that:

- outlines the reasons why the EBM targets cannot be applied and identifies the commitment to:
  - maintain rare or endangered species and protect ecological values;
  - develop implementation plans ;
- outlines monitoring and reporting activities;
- provides compelling reasons for moving beyond the EBM targets;
- Increases community wellbeing and ecological integrity in the long term;
- Is linked to enhancing the wellbeing of First Nation communities;
- improves prospects for the vulnerable communities affected by the activity.

The terms and conditions for decision-making related to the adoption and flexible management of EBM will be outlined in cooperative management arrangements between the First Nations and the Province. The EBM Council will review flexible management decisions and recommend whether an audit of the plan should be done.

The application of these mechanisms and approaches are described in greater detail in section 2.3.



## 7.0 Table Member Clarifications Regarding Abstentions to Table Motions

---

### 7.1 Introduction

The following are statements by table members to clarify abstentions to table motions on the CCLRMP agreement.

### 7.2 Wildlife Sector Statement (BC Wildlife Federation)

Effective fish and wildlife management depends on free access to all tools available to maintain or enhance habitat and existing health of specie inventory. Overuse of habitat or habituation may require harvesting subject to strict controls.

Harvesting or hunting is an acceptable tradition in place since the beginning of man and is permitted only if the specie inventory is sustainable. Legislative land use restrictions circumventing proper fish and wildlife management may severely hamper required responsive actions necessary for British Columbia's natural resources.

### 7.3 Terrestrial Conservation Sector Statement

The Terrestrial Conservation Sector acknowledges the right of First Nations to hunt for subsistence, ceremonial, and cultural use with ecological limits. The majority of environmental and conservation groups in British Columbia, however, have been consistently on record in opposition to "sport" or "trophy" hunting including that of bear species. Environmental groups have also strongly opposed control / eradication programs for carnivores such as wolves. For these reasons, the following objection of the Terrestrial Conservation sector is on record in the CCLRMP, and is to be noted in conjunction with Guide Outfitting, Hunting, and Trapping GMD and other references to hunting within the CCLRMP report.

The Terrestrial Conservation Sector opposes the hunting of carnivores with the plan area, and opposes all hunting with EBM Protected areas, EBM Biodiversity areas; and Grizzly Bear Management areas, with the exception of First Nations' subsistence, ceremonial, and cultural use.

## 8.0 Bibliography

---

- BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. (2001). CCLCRMP Phase I Framework Agreement. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/Framework%20Agreement.pdf](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/Framework%20Agreement.pdf)
- BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. (2001). Central Coast Land and Coastal Resource Management Plan, Map of Recommended Land Use Zones as per April 4th, 2001. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/images/maps/landuseapril4.jpg](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/images/maps/landuseapril4.jpg)
- BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. (2001). Central Coast Land and Coastal Resource Management Plan, Draft Terrestrial Recommendations. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CCLCRMP%20DRAFT%20Terrestrial%20Recommendations.pdf](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CCLCRMP%20DRAFT%20Terrestrial%20Recommendations.pdf)
- BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. (2004). Index of Completed Tourism Opportunity Studies. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: <http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/dss/initiatives/tourism/tos/index.htm>
- BC Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. (2003) Socio-Economic and Environmental Assessment for Land and Resource Management Planning in British Columbia: Guiding Principles – July 28<sup>th</sup>, 2003 <http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/rmd/ecdev/docs/GuidingPrinciples.pdf>
- Enfor Consultants. (2002). Broughton Visuals Project. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: <http://www.enfor.com/plans/lrmp/centralcoast/index.htm>
- Gitga'at First Nation. (2003). Land Use Plan, Summary Working Draft, for discussion only. Accessed March 24, 2004. FTP: [ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Nanaimo\\_%20Mtgs\\_%20Dec\\_%2008\\_%20and%209%202003/gitgaat%20lup%202003.11.30.pdf](ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Nanaimo_%20Mtgs_%20Dec_%2008_%20and%209%202003/gitgaat%20lup%202003.11.30.pdf)
- Holman, G. and Eliot, T. (2001). Central Coast Land & Coastal Resource Management Plan (LCRMP)Phase 1 "*Framework Agreement*" Socio-Economic and Environmental Assessment: Final Report. BC Ministry of Competition, Science, and Enterprise. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CentralAssessmentSEfinal.pdf](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CentralAssessmentSEfinal.pdf)
- Kitasoo/Xaixais First Nation. (2000) Land and Resource Protection and Management Plan. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: <http://www.kitasoo.org/forestry/landplan/index-LandUsePlan.html>
- Lewis, K., Crinklaw, J. and Murphy A. (1997). The Central Coast Protected Area Strategy (PAS) Report, Revised Study Areas for the Central Coast LRMP Area. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/reports/ccpasrpt/ccpasrpt.htm](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/reports/ccpasrpt/ccpasrpt.htm)
- Marlyn Chisholm & Associates et al (2001). Tourism Opportunity Strategy for the Mid Coast Forest District of British Columbia - Final Report. Prepared for: BC Ministry of Small Business, Tourism & Culture. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/dss/initiatives/tourism/tos/MidCoast/final%20pdf%20files/html\\_table\\_of\\_contents.htm](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/dss/initiatives/tourism/tos/MidCoast/final%20pdf%20files/html_table_of_contents.htm)

McKim, P. (2000). Northern Plan Area Economic Opportunity and Barriers Study: Central Coast Outer Coast- Hypermaritime Zone, Central Coast- Middle Coast- Maritime Zone, Central Coast- Inner Coast-Submaritime Zone. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CC%20Opportunities&Barriers.pdf](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/CC%20Opportunities&Barriers.pdf)

Pierce Lefebvre Consulting and D.A. Ruffle & Associates Ltd. (2003). Analysis of Woodflow in the Coast Forest Region. Presented to the B.C. Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. Accessed March 24, 2004. FTP: [ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Richmond\\_Mtgs\\_Sept\\_2003/Final%20Woodflow%20Report-sept19%2003.doc](ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Richmond_Mtgs_Sept_2003/Final%20Woodflow%20Report-sept19%2003.doc)

Pojar, J. and Rowan, C. et al. (1999). Silvicultural Options in the Central Coast: A Report Prepared for the Central Coast Land and Coastal Resource Management Plan. Accessed March 24, 2004. URL: [http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource\\_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/PojarMar.pdf](http://srmwww.gov.bc.ca/cr/resource_mgmt/lrmp/cencoast/docs/PojarMar.pdf)

The Economic Planning Group, Juan De Fuca Environmental Consultants, and Anderson, D. (2003). Economic Impact Analysis of Outdoor Recreation on British Columbia's Central Coast, North Coast and Queen Charlotte Islands/Haida Gwaii. Prepared for the Outdoor Recreation Council of British Columbia.

Warttig, W., Landers, M. (2003). Testing the Hydoriparian Planning Guide - Report for: North and Central Coast LRMP Tables and Coastal Information Team. Accessed March 24, 2004. FTP: [ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Bella\\_Coola\\_Mtg\\_Sept\\_9-112003/7%20-%20HPG%20Trial%200828.pdf](ftp://ftpnan.env.gov.bc.ca/pub/outgoing/dist/gisdata/cclrmp/docs/Bella_Coola_Mtg_Sept_9-112003/7%20-%20HPG%20Trial%200828.pdf)

Wuikinuxv Nation Land Use Steering Committee. (2003). Land of the Hamatsa, Land and Marine Use Plan, Approved Draft November 7, 2003.

## 9.0 Glossary of Terms

---

**Active Adaptive Management:** Key features of Active Adaptive Management include:

- explicit hypotheses;
- experimental design;
- methodology peer review prior to implementation;
- published results; and
- collaborative implementation involving proponents, governments, other operators, interested parties, as well as research institutions and universities.

**Active Flood Plain:** Areas adjacent to a stream channel that are flooded frequently. Some analysts describe the active floodplain as the wet floodplain (HPG Technical Report 3).

**Adaptive Management:** The rigorous combination of management, research, and monitoring so that credible information is gained and management activities can be modified by experience. Adaptive management acknowledges institutional barriers to change and designs means to overcome them. See *active adaptive management* and *passive adaptive management* entries in glossary.

**Aggregate Management Plan:** A plan to identify the Aggregate (sand and gravel, etc.) resources in an area and assess the environmental, social and economic factors affecting its development. The plan includes a management strategy for Aggregate extraction and rehabilitation of future and existing sites. The goal is to manage Aggregate resources in the best possible manner for maximum benefit and promote safe and orderly production of Aggregate resources.

**Agreement In Principle (AIP):** An agreement signed December 9, 2003, between the Coast Forest Conservation Initiative (CFCI) companies and Rainforest Solutions Project (RSP) ENGOs that provides recommendations on a solution for the CCLRMP Completion table.

**Allowable Annual Cut (AAC):** The allowable rate of timber harvest from a specified area of land. The Chief Forester sets AACs for timber supply areas (TSAs) and tree farm licences (TFLs) in accordance with Section 7 of the *Forest Act*

**Alluvial Fan:** Cone-like sediment accumulations that develop where streams reach the valley floor and deposit sediment and organic debris. From apex to toe, fans have a slope gradient up to and including 26%.

**Benchmark:** A standard against which planning and management outcomes are compared. Benchmarks may be based on knowledge of ecological processes and functions and their variability (e.g. RENV), on regulatory and legal requirements (e.g. health standards) or on objectives set by local communities and stakeholders (e.g. desired employment level).

**Biodiversity:** The diversity of organisms in all their forms and levels of organization, including genes, species, ecosystems and the evolutionary and functional processes that link them. (*EBM Handbook Sept. 16/03*)

**Biogeoclimatic ecosystem classification (BEC):** A system that groups similar segments of the landscape (ecosystems) in categories of hierarchical classification system. An ecosystem is the product of a complex interaction of vegetation, animals,

micro-organisms and the physical environment. For the purposes of BEC, an ecosystem is defined as a particular plant community and its associated topography, soil, and climate.

**Blue listed species:** Includes any indigenous species or subspecies (taxa) considered to be Vulnerable in British Columbia. Vulnerable taxa are of special concern because of characteristics that make them particularly sensitive to human activities or natural events. (Conservation Data Centre)

**Carrying capacity:** The number of livestock, wildlife, and/or tourists that can be sustained on a management unit, compatible with management objectives for the unit. It is a function of site characteristics, management goals and management intensity.

**Classified Waters:** Water identified in Regulation 125/90 (*BC Wildlife Act*) as either Class 1 or 2 for the purposes of regulating angling use. A Classified Water may be part or all of a river or stream, and the classification may apply to one or more periods of the year. The general criteria for classified waters include: high quality angling experience; unpolluted waters; undeveloped, natural settings; high interest, wild recreational stocks; and risk to conservation or angling quality from angling demand. Classified waters are regulated through "rod angler days" that are a form of tenure.

**Coarse woody debris (CWD):** Rotting logs, tree parts and large branches that have fallen or been cut and left in the forest, and that provide habitat for plants, animals, and insects and a source of nutrients for soil development (generally >7.5 cm in diameter).

**Coast Forest Conservation Initiative (CFCI):** Coastal forest companies of Canadian Forest Products; Interfor; Norske Canada; Western/ Domain; and Weyerhaeuser.

**Coast Information Team (CIT):** A project established by the provincial government of British Columbia, First Nations, environmental groups, the forest industry, and communities. The CIT mandate is to provide independent information on the Central and Coasts and Haida Gwaii using best available science, technical, traditional and local knowledge.

**Conservation Planning:** A broad-based ecosystem approach to planning for the protection and perpetuation of biological diversity. Conservation planning identifies and provides for the regional and smaller scale protection of plants, animals and their habitats, while allowing compatible and appropriate economic activity (EBM Handbook Sept. 16/03).

**Critical habitat:** An ecosystem or particular ecosystem element occupied or used by a species, or local population, that is essential for their health and/or long-term persistence.

**Cultural Heritage Resource:** An object, a site or the location of a traditional societal practice that is of historical, cultural or archaeological significance to the Province, a community or an aboriginal people. Cultural heritage resources include archaeological sites, structural features, heritage landscape features and traditional use sites (*Forest Act*).

**Disturbance regime:** Disturbance regime encompasses the type, extent, frequency, and intensity of events that disturb or displace other ecological processes. They create characteristic spatial and temporal patterns on landscapes and leave structural legacies within stands. In the plan area, most disturbance events are due to flooding, debris flows, slides, and snow avalanches, with some wind and rare fire disturbances.

**Ecological integrity:** A quality or state of an ecosystem in which it is considered complete or unimpaired; including the natural diversity of species and biological communities, ecosystem processes and functions, and both the ability to absorb disturbance (resistance) and to recover from disturbance (resilience). (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03)

**Ecosystem:** Any unit that includes all of the organisms (i.e., the community) in a given area interacting with the physical environment so that a flow of energy leads to a clearly defined trophic structure, biotic diversity, and material cycles (i.e. exchange of material between living and non-living parts) within the system. (Odum, in Cunningham, WP, T Ball, TH Cooper, E Gorham, M Hepworth and AA Marcus (eds) 1994. *Environmental Encyclopedia*. Gale Research Inc., Detroit, MI.)

**Ecosystem Based Management (EBM):** An adaptive approach to managing human activities that seeks to ensure the co-existence of healthy, fully function ecosystems and human communities. The intent is to maintain those spatial and temporal characteristics and processes of whole ecosystems such that component species and ecological processes can be sustained, and human social economic and cultural activities can be enhanced. (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03)

**Ecosystem-Based Management Council:** The EBM Council will be the steward of EBM as it is applied in the Central Coast Plan Area. The Council oversees the ongoing development and implementation of EBM in a transparent and accountable manner.

**Ecosystem capability:** Threshold based on natural conditions and social preferences that determines the number and density of activities - ability to accommodate and assimilate a certain level of activity and which if exceeded results in degradation to the supporting natural system (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03).

**Endangered:** Taxa facing imminent extirpation or extinction. (Conservation Data Centre)

**Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA):** An activity designed to identify, predict, interpret and communicate information about the impact of actions (legislation proposal, policies, programs, projects and operational procedures) on human and health and well-being, including the well-being of the ecosystems on which human survival depends (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03).

**Estuary:** The embayed mouth of a river where the tide meets the river flow, creating brackish water zones with a range of salinity. Extremely rich and productive ecosystems exist where tidal marine water and sediment mixes with freshwater and river sediment. (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03)

**Fish:** Includes parts of fish, shellfish, crustaceans, marine animals and any parts of shellfish, crustaceans or marine animals, and the eggs, sperm, spawn, larvae, spat and juvenile stages of fish, shellfish, crustaceans and marine animals. (*Federal Fisheries Act*, Sec 2)

**Fish habitat:** Freshwater, estuarine and marine environments that directly or indirectly support fish stocks or fish populations that sustain, or have the potential to sustain, subsistence, commercial or recreational fishing activities.

**Goal:** An overarching purpose or commitment which guides planning and decision-making. (*EBM Handbook* Sept. 16/03)

**Habitat Capability:** A habitat interpretation for species which describes the greatest potential of a habitat to support that species. Habitat potential may not be reflected by the present habitat condition or successional stage.

**Habitat Suitability:** Habitat potential reflected by the present habitat condition or successional stage. (*MoF Glossary of Terms*)

**Hydroriparian zone:** Area that extends to the edge of the influence of water on land defined by plant community (including high-bench or dry floodplain communities or land form (e.g., gullies) plus one and a half site-specific tree heights (horizontal distance) beyond. In the transportation and deposition process zones, the hydroriparian zone includes the entire valley bottom plus one and a half tree heights. (*EBM Handbook, July 16, 2003*)

**Indicators:** Indicators are measures that index the state of complex functions that are difficult to assess. Good indicators respond to management actions, are related clearly to the function considered, can be measured or described simply, are relatively insensitive to factors beyond the management actions considered, and are appropriate for the purpose and scale considered. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Industrial minerals:** Naturally occurring materials, including stone and rocks, used to build structures or supply products that are useful to society. Industrial minerals include abrasives but exclude the ores of metals, gems and art objects. (*Mineral Tenure Act*)

**Institutional arrangements:** The laws, regulations, policies, social norms and organizations governing and participating in resource use. Institutional arrangements specify who has access to resources, guide resource development activities, and define who will monitor and enforce the rules. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Kwakiutl District Council (KDC):** The KDC is a political organisation representing nine First Nations in the CCLRMP process. Many of the KDC member First Nations are located on the north-eastern end of Vancouver Island and all have traditional territories in the South plan area. The member First Nations of the KDC participating in this CCLRMP include Kwakiutl, Mamalelegala-Qwe-Qwa Sot-Enox, Da 'naxda' xw, Gwa Sala 'Nakwaxda' xw, Tlatlasikwala, We Wai Kai, We Wai Kum, Kwiakah and Comox.

**Landscape unit:** A planning area ranging from 25,000 to 100,000 ha in size delineated according to topographic or geologic features such as watersheds or groups of watersheds and formally established by District Manager. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Major sub-surface resource development:** Large drilling programs, projects involving road building, bulk samples, all projects submitted to the regional Mine Development Review Committee and all projects requiring review by the Environmental Assessment office.

**Management objective:** A specific goal, related to ecosystems, ecosystem components or natural resources, to be affected by an action or development; a specific defined goal to be achieved. Objectives are often diagnostic by nature, reflecting the signs and symptoms of a larger problem and assisting in the assessment of performance in addressing that problem. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Management target:** A numerical value to be achieved in relation to a management objective. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Minimize:** Reduce to the least possible.

**Monitoring:** A process of periodic or continuous auditing, observation or data collection. There are three types of monitoring associated with an EBM: implementation monitoring ensures that the management procedures are being followed; effectiveness monitoring which assesses whether management is attaining the objectives for each indicator; and validation monitoring which tests the assumptions associated with the risk assessment model parameters and relationships. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Musgamagw Tsawataineuk Tribal Council (MTTC):** The MTTC is a political organisation representing three First Nations in the CCLRMP process. The member First Nations of the MTTC participating in this CCLRMP are: 'Namgis, Tsawataineuk and Kwicksutaineuk.

**Natural Disturbance Regime:** The historic patterns (frequency, extent and character) of fire, insects, wind, landslides, floods, and other natural processes in an area (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*).

**Non Timber Forest Products:** Products, including botanicals, from the forest exclusive of timber products.

**Objective:** An explicit goal to be achieved with respect to a resource value or management issue. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Old growth forests:** Old forests that are defined by a group of attributes, including age, multi-layered canopies, canopy gaps, high levels of decayed wood, and large trees. Due to a lack of inventory for these attributes, old growth forests are considered to be those stands identified as older than 250 years (note: current forest cover inventory tends to underestimate stand age, particularly stands located on moderate and poor growing sites). (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Passive Adaptive Management:** Key features of Passive Adaptive Management include:

- Explicit objectives
- A monitoring component
- Monitoring and comparison of alternative practices to achieve specific outcomes and objectives.

**Pesticides:** A chemical used to kill pests, especially insects. Includes pesticides, herbicides, fungicides and fertilizers.

**Practicable:** Feasibility based on the consideration of a combination of factors including environmental factors, engineering, contractual arrangements, economic factors, timing etc.

**Precautionary principle:** The adoption of measures to reduce potential harm resulting from human activities or environmental change even if some cause and effect relationships are not fully established scientifically. It includes taking action in the face of uncertainty; shifting burdens of proof to those who create risks; analysis of alternatives to potentially harmful activities. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Protection (Protected) Area:** A delineated area within which a specified range of activities is not permitted in order to preserve an identified set of values. Includes, but is not limited to, designations under the *Park Act* (i.e. provincial parks and ecological reserves), and areas reserved under the *Environment and Land Use Act*, and the *Land Act*. Protection areas are generally established through strategic planning at regional or subregional scales.



**Rainforest Solutions Project (RSP):** The Environmental Non-Government Organizations (ENGO's) of Forest Ethics; Greenpeace; Rainforest Action Network and Sierra Club of Canada, BC Chapter.

**Range of natural variability (RONV):** The range of dynamic change in natural systems over historic time periods (~ 500 years before present). RONV is used as a benchmark to assess the degree of past change and to guide future management. Descriptions of RONV are limited by availability of information about past disturbances and landscape change. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Rare ecosystems:** Uncommon ecosystems that require special consideration when determining acceptable levels of risk. The Conservation Data Centre compiles lists of rare ecosystems for British Columbia. Red-listed ecosystems typically have 20 or fewer good examples in British Columbia, blue-listed have fewer than 100. Not all rare ecosystems are listed by CDC. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Representative ecosystems:** Ecosystems that are especially common, that define the character of a region (e.g., bogs in the Hecate Lowland). (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Reserve:** Areas where no, or very little, extractive resource use takes place, but the land has no formal protected status. They are generally established during tactical planning at landscape and watershed scales. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Retention:** Individual trees or groups of trees that are retained in harvested forest stands for varying lengths of time to provide for the maintenance of site scale structure and composition. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Risk:** The possibility for attributes of ecological integrity or human well-being will be changed or lost – in effect, exposure to potential loss. In the context of land management, it is interpreted as the probability (i.e., relative exposure) that an undesired outcome (loss) will result from a particular management action. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Risk assessment:** A process for estimating the likelihood or probability of an adverse outcome or event (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*).

**Seral stage:** Any stage of development of an ecosystem from a disturbed, unvegetated state to a climax plant community. It defines the structural attributes and age of a plant community. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Site:** One or more discrete units, typically one hectare to several tens of hectares in size. The appropriate mapping scale for site-level planning ranges from 1:2,000 to 1:5,000. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Site Series Surrogate:** Productive forest land grouped by Biogeoclimatic (BEC) variant and analysis unit to represent ecosystem site series. (Analysis units are aggregates of forest areas with similar growth and yield characteristics or site index)

**Stand:** A community of trees sufficiently uniform in species composition, age and structure to be distinguishable from nearby forest communities and thus form a forest site management unit. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Statutory decision maker (SDM):** A person given powers under provincial legislation to make administrative decisions and approve operational plans for harvesting, road building, silviculture activities and range use. SDMs interpret and apply relevant provincial legislation, regulations and policies. (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*)

**Sustainability:** A state or process that can be maintained indefinitely. The principles of sustainability integrate three closely interlinked elements—the environment, the economy and the social system—into a system that can be maintained in a healthy state indefinitely (*MoF Glossary of Terms*).

**Target:** A numerical objectives that specifies the management results to be achieved (*EBM Handbook July 16/03*).

**Threshold:** A level of an indicator which specifies that a significant or action-triggering condition has been reached (*EBM Handbook July 16, 2003*).

**Tlowitsis:** An independent First Nation not belonging to the KDC/MTTC Tribal Councils but have traditional territories within the South plan area. The Tlowitsis Nation is connected linguistically and culturally to the member First Nations of the KDC/MTTC.

**Water User:** A person authorized under section 5 of the *Water Act* to divert, use, and/or store water.

**Zone:** a geographic area within a larger planning area that is distinct from other geographic areas with respect to biophysical characteristics, resources values, or resource management direction.

## 10.0 Acronyms Used in this Report

---

AAC	Allowable Annual Cut
AIP	Agreement In Principle
CDC	Conservation Data Center
CIT	Coast Information Team
CPAs	Candidate Protected Areas
CWD	Coarse Woody Debris
EBM	Ecosystem Based Management
EBMF	Ecosystem Based Management Framework
FDPs	Forest Development Plans
FSPs	Forest Stewardship Plans
GBMAs	Grizzly Bear Management Areas
GBPU	Grizzly Bear Population Unit
GMD	General Management Directions
HPG	Hydroriparian Planning Guide
JSP	Joint Solutions Project
LRMP	Land and Resource Management Plan
MTTC	Musgamagw-Tsawataineuk Tribal Council
NOGO	Northern Goshawk
NTFP	Non-Timber Forest Products
OGMA	Old Growth Management Area
RONV	Range of Natural Variability
SEEA	Socio-Economic and Environmental Assessment
THLB	Timber Harvesting Land Base
VQO	Visual Quality Objective

# CENTRAL COAST LRMP COMPLETION TABLE RECOMMENDATIONS

## APPENDICES

---

*Note: Appendix headings are hyperlinked in electronic version of document*

- Appendix 1: [Map List](#)
- Appendix 2: [Terms of Reference for Process Completion Phase](#)
- Appendix 3: [Motions of the Completion Table](#)
- Appendix 4: [Agreement in Principle \(Dec 9, 2003\)](#)
- Appendix 5: [Management Direction for Protection Areas](#)
- Appendix 6 : [Visuals Management Agreement and Examples](#)
- Appendix 7: [EBM Handbook](#)
- Appendix 8: [Unresolved General Management Direction Objectives and Strategies](#)

## **Appendix 1 – Maps**

---

- Map 1. Plan area
- Map 2. Ecosections
- Map 3. Forest cover - age class
- Map 4. Known fish presence
- Map 5. Mountain Goat winter range
- Map 6. Black-tailed Deer suitability
- Map 7. Marbled Murrelet nesting suitability
- Map 8. Timber harvesting land base
- Map 9. Recreation and tourism special features and activities
- Map 10. Metallic mineral potential
- Map 11. Ecosystem based management zones
- Map 12. Grizzly Bear Management Areas
- Map 13. Visual management zones

The maps included in Appendix 1 are for general information purposed only. Appropriate scale maps and digital files are available from the Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management.

## Appendix 2 – Terms of Reference for Completion Table, List of Sectors and Representatives, and Plan Vision Statement

---

**CENTRAL COAST**  
**LAND & RESOURCE MANAGEMENT PLAN**

**TERMS OF REFERENCE**  
**FOR**  
**PROCESS COMPLETION PHASE**

**November 14, 2001**

## DEFINITIONS

<b>CC</b>	Central Coast
<b>Coast Information Team (CIT)</b>	An independent information body designed to provide assistance and recommendations to planning tables on ecosystem based management, community economic development and transition, and other topics As outlined in its description and funding agreement documents..
<b>LRMP</b>	Land and Resource Management Plan.
<b>LCRMP</b>	Land and Coastal Resource Management Plan.
<b>Coastal Zone Strategic Plan</b>	That portion of the March 15, 2001 Interim Draft LCRMP document pertaining to coastal and nearshore land and resources to the high tide level, as amended and approved by government.
<b>Collaborative Process</b>	One in which the primary objective is for all participants to reach agreement on recommendations to government for their consideration and decision. Where final agreement cannot be reached on substantive topics, the nature of disagreement is to be documented and forwarded along with agreed-upon topics for government consideration and decision at the end of the process.
<b>Facilitator/ Special Advisor</b>	An individual retained by and accountable to the Process Chair to provide facilitation and other support services to expedite negotiations at the Completion Table or subcommittee tables.
<b>MSRM</b>	The provincial Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management. Formed in June of 2001, the Ministry is responsible for strategic land and resource use planning by the provincial government.
<b>Process Participant</b>	Individual or organisation formally recognized as participating in the CCLRMP process as a member of a sector represented at the Table.
<b>Sector Representative/ Table Member</b>	The individual formally recognised by others within a sector as their representative at the Table, and being able to make commitments for the sector at Table meetings. The sector representative is a Table member. Each sector representative will be limited to a designated alternate for the purpose of representation at the Table.
<b>TPT</b>	Provincial agency Technical Planning Team, established to provide mapping, analysis and report/plan writing support, as well as government policy and program information to the Table. Chaired by MSRM.
<b>Process Chair</b>	The individual appointed to the process by the Minister of SRM to chair Table meetings, and oversee a collaborative process in which table members seek agreement on recommendations to government respecting land and resource management and economic transition. May retain facilitators and special advisors to assist in resolution of Table issues. Accountable to the Minister for delivering a Table agreement on a recommended plan or options endorsed by sectors in accordance with the Terms of Reference. Accountable to the Table members for maintenance of collaborative approach among participants.
<b>Plan Area</b>	The terrestrial area above the high water mark, as shown on accompanying map..
<b>Process Manager</b>	The individual accountable to the Regional Director of MSRM for the smooth operation of the planning process in accordance with its Terms of Reference. Provides logistical and financial support for the process. Serves as alternate chair of the Table, and chairs and provides for facilitation (which may include independent facilitation) for working group and small group negotiation sessions between Table meetings.
<b>Process Team</b>	A team comprised of the Process Chair, Process Manager, facilitators, and TPT Chair. Meets as necessary to review process issues and strategies, and develop specific work plans and structures to meet process milestones. Does not include government's Table member.



## **PLAN AREA**

The Central Coast LRMP plan area is shown in Appendix 2-1. The plan area (terrestrial and coastal) is 5.86 million hectares in size. The planning process will focus on completion of the terrestrial component of the plan area.

Planning of the coastal near-shore component has been completed and consensus recommendations were forwarded to government as part of the March 15, 2001 Interim Draft Plan and Stakeholder Framework Agreement.

## **MANDATE**

The mandate of the LRMP process during the Completion Phase is to develop for Cabinet consideration and approval, a plan for the Central Coast that:

1. Reflects government's decision regarding the March 15, 2001 Interim Draft Plan and Stakeholder Framework Agreement, including:
  - Commitment to ecosystem-based management;
  - Establishment of an Information Team to provide advice to the Table;
  - Commitment to legal protection of candidate protection areas, subject to confirmation of areas with affected First Nations and resolution of minor boundary issues;
  - Deferral of forest harvesting and mining in candidate Protection Areas and in Option Areas using Part 13 of the Forest Act up to March 31, 2003, to accommodate table determination of designations;
  - Establishment of a smaller completion table to make recommendations on final designation of Option Areas, and complete the plan within 24 months of March 15, 2001;
  - Establishing financial mechanisms to address short-term impact mitigation and long-term economic transition;
  - Commitment to a parallel process with First Nations to address issues raised in the LCRMP.
2. Fosters economic and environmental sustainability;
3. Delivers a comprehensive system of land use zoning that clearly describes the location of each zone and its resource values, general management direction for each zone, management objectives and strategies applicable to specific zones, and any implementation requirements such as policy or legislative change;
4. Identifies economic, environmental social and community transition requirements and strategies; and
5. Describes a strategy for implementation of the CCLRMP including priorities for more detailed planning, research, inventory, and ongoing evaluation and monitoring.

The plan document will be based on the March 15, 2001 Interim Draft Plan which will be revised by TPT staff to reflect the changes, revisions, new components, and outcomes of negotiations among the process participants, for ratification by the Table.

## **LINKAGE TO THE COAST INFORMATION TEAM (CIT)**

An independent, multi disciplinary information body is being established to provide advice and recommendations to the LRMP Table on an Ecosystem Based Management framework, resource strategies, zoning, community economic transition and other matters. Products to be developed by the CIT are defined in the CIT "Implementation and Management" document. Table requests for information from the CIT will be confirmed through a service agreement between the Process Manager and Chair and the CIT Management Committee. The CIT description and terms of reference documents will be provided to process participants.

The CIT Management Committee will provide regular updates to the LRMP Table on progress, information assembly, products, and other items. The Table may elect to delegate this responsibility of liaison to the TPT.

Products from the CIT, including results from the associated EBM pilot projects, will be provided and presented to the Table for consideration and discussion of EBM.

## **RELATIONSHIP TO ABORIGINAL ISSUES**

A number of issues were identified by First Nations in the LCRMP process. These issues are being addressed through a separate "enabling process" and do not form part of further discussions in the LRMP Completion Phase. Where "enabling process" outcomes result in changes to land and resource management in the plan area, these will be brought to the Completion Table for appropriate modification of recommended LRMP products.

The CCLRMP process and all products produced by the CCLRMP are without prejudice to First Nations and the provincial and federal government on land and resource management issues at the treaty table and First Nation claims of rights and title.

Similarly, involvement by a First Nation in the CCLRMP process does not abrogate the Province's responsibility to prevent the infringement of aboriginal rights through the process of consultation with a First Nation on specific development proposals, nor shall it be considered a substitute for such consultation.

## **RELATIONSHIP TO OTHER PLANNING PROCESSES**

The LRMP will take into consideration the information and products produced by existing planning processes underway or completed (e.g. LRUP's, park master plans, the Central Coast Coastal Zone Strategic Plan, etc.) for portions of the plan area. Once the LRMP is approved, it will provide direction to future local plans such as landscape unit plans, and could lead to modifications of existing local plans.

Prior to finalizing the CCLRMP the Table will assess the plan against the Central Coast Coastal Zone Strategic Plan to address conflicting and competing management and zoning on adjacent planning units.

## **TIME FRAME AND DOCUMENT APPROVAL**

The terrestrial component of the CCLRMP will be completed by March 15, 2003. If the plan is not complete by this time, the Process Team will complete the plan using all available information.

The completion process will be guided by the deliverables, or "milestones" identified in Appendix 2-2. To achieve these milestones, the Process Team will develop work plans that provide for appropriate task group meetings and technical work to assist the Table in reaching these milestones. The milestones are predicated on timely delivery of required recommendations from the Coast Information Team. Failure of the CIT to deliver information will not constitute a legitimate reason for long-term extension of the LRMP completion process.

## **FINAL LRMP RECOMMENDATIONS - NO AGREEMENT**

If a final draft plan is not ratified or agreed to by all sector representatives by March 31, 2003, the draft plan will be forwarded by the Process Chair to the Minister with clear identification of areas of agreement and areas of disagreement, as well as denotation of the parties in disagreement. If sectors have developed options or alternatives, these will also be delivered to the Minister for consideration.

The draft plan will be accompanied by a report that identifies the attempts made to resolve areas of disagreement among the sectors. The report will also seek to include the views and recommendations of participating First Nations. MSRM will engage in government-to-government discussions between First Nations and the Province in the event of First Nations disagreement or concerns with plan recommendations.

The government will not characterise any decisions it makes on the basis of the draft plan as being endorsed by, acceptable to, or agreed to by the CCLRMP Table or any Table sector, without consent of those sectors.

## **REVIEW AND APPROVAL OF FINAL PLAN**

All First Nations within the plan area, whether they have participated in the CCLRMP process or not, will be invited to review, comment upon and/or endorse any final draft plan.

Any approval or endorsement by a First Nation in respect of the final draft plan does not prejudice that First Nation's position on land and resource management issues at the treaty table or affect in any way its claims of rights and titles.

All local governments within or adjacent to the plan area, whether or not they have participated in the CCLRMP process shall be invited to review, comment upon and/or endorse any final draft plan as per the Union of B.C. Municipalities Protocol Agreement.

## **PLAN IMPLEMENTATION**

Once approved by the provincial Cabinet, the plan shall be implemented and monitored by appropriate provincial government agencies, coordinated by MSRM.

If considered desirable by the CCLRMP process, a monitoring committee may be established by MSRM to monitor plan implementation.

## **TABLE PARTICIPATION, STRUCTURE AND MEMBERSHIP**

### **a) General**

The Completion Table will follow a sectoral model of representation. Members of the Completion Table are representatives of the sectors who have been invited to participate by the Minister of SRM.

Most of the work and negotiations to develop a draft Plan will take place in smaller working groups and/or through negotiations among sectors for specific topics.

Each sector at the Completion Table will confirm which of its specific member organisations or groups within a sector should participate in such negotiations, where the topic of negotiation requires more detailed or different perspectives from within a sector. For efficiency, sectors will seek to minimise the number of persons identified to participate in subcommittee work. Governments will similarly provide for representation from a specific agency representative to negotiate items within the mandate of that agency.

The Completion Table meetings are viewed as plenary sessions of the representatives of the groups that have negotiated or worked on specific completion tasks. The Table will meet only as required to collaborate in review, agreement and ratification of work that has been developed, or to incorporate additional information into the work that has already been prepared, such as recommendations from the Information Team.

By participating in the LRMP completion process, each sector and its representatives agree to be bound by this Terms of Reference.

## **b) Sectors**

The original CCLRMP structure has been modified and one seat is now provided for each of the following sectors, at a single planning table (the Completion Table):

- Small Business Forestry
- Labour
- Terrestrial Conservation
- Major Forest Companies
- Recreation
- Tourism
- Energy & Mining
- North Local Government/Communities
- South Local Government/Communities
- Kwakiutl District Council (KDC)
- Musgamag'w Tsawataineuk Tribal Council (MTTC)
- Tlowitsis Nation
- Oweekeno Nation
- Heiltsuk Nation
- Nuxalk Nation
- Federal government
- Provincial government

Sectors are to be self-defined and consistent with the above list, based on participation prior to March 15, 2001. By participating in this Completion Table, each sector representative agrees to having established and being accountable to a sector advisory committee representing a spectrum of interests in the sector, both local and regional. Each sector further agrees to provide the Process Manager with a list of declared member organisations, representatives and advisory committee membership, so that the

spokespersons for those member organisations may be identified for participation in the working group negotiations. The new sectors may include organisations that did not participate in the first phase of the LCRMP process.

Individuals and organisations who are not process participants but have expressed a desire to be involved in the CCLRMP planning process can have their interests communicated during formal discussions through the appropriate sector spokesperson. The Process Team is responsible for accommodating these other interests when the parties do not fit within an existing Table sector.

Each sector advisory committee will appoint an alternate Table member / sector representative for those occasions when the Table representative cannot attend a Completion Table meeting.

During Table sessions, only the sector spokesperson shall participate in the discussion and any determination of whether agreement exists or ratification is made with respect to the matter being discussed. This requirement will be enforced by the Table Chair.

### **c) Table Member Obligations**

It is the responsibility of each sector representative at the Completion Table to:

- Keep the steering committee and member organisations fully and currently informed with respect to the status of the process, upcoming working group sessions and the nature of issues being discussed;
- Provide constituents with a general orientation regarding the Terms of Reference, and in particular, the Mandate; and
- Regularly communicate with other member organisations in between Table meetings.

### **d) Travel and Meeting Support**

MSRM will cover the normal Table or subcommittee/working group meeting participation costs of a sector representative, in accordance with government's participant funding guidelines.

Attendance at a Completion Table meeting by other members of a sector other than the sector representative will occur at the expense of that sector. However, MSRM will cover the expenses for the participation of representatives from the constituent organisations of a sector where these organisations are confirmed by the Chair or Process Manager as required for the topics under negotiation in working groups or small groups.

MSRM will consider covering reasonable costs incurred by a sector related to organization and distribution of information, administration costs, and costs of in-sector meetings directly associated with its work on the LRMP. Requests to cover such costs must be provided in advance to the Process Manager for prior approval.

MSRM reserves the right to refuse reimbursement of participant costs where the claimant has been absent from the meetings for which they are seeking reimbursement. Where a dispute arises, the record of meeting attendance will be used by the Process Manager as the basis for a decision.

## **SUBCOMMITTEES, TASK GROUPS, AND WORKSHOPS**

The completion phase of the LRMP will rely on a collaborative process for negotiation among parties or working groups to deal with specific issues.

The identification of required groups, their tenure, ground rules and specific membership will be determined by the Process Chair in collaboration with the sector representatives. As agreements and points of disagreement are confirmed on maps, zones, objectives, etc, the appropriate notations will be made on the March 15, 2001 Interim Draft Plan document by TPT staff.

Subject to discretion of the Process Chair, subcommittee meetings will be chaired by the Process Manager or Special Advisors, and will include facilitation if required (including independent facilitation).

The Completion Table has the opportunity to recommend independent facilitation of working groups and subcommittees to the Process Chair, where issues are considered to be significant. Any government staff person appointed to facilitate a meeting cannot also represent government views on the issues.

Government Table members (provincial, federal, etc) will also provide for appropriate representation by government staff to address technical and policy issues, as required.

Recommendations and/or negotiated products developed by subcommittees, task groups or workshops are subject to review and acceptance by the Completion Table.

The member organisation of a sector that has been part of negotiations at a working group will convey the final views of the organisation to the sector representative who will be at the Completion Table meeting to ratify the work of that particular working group. Where it is appropriate, the Process Manager may authorise the attendance of specific member organisation representatives to alternate with the Table's sector representative as part of the ratification discussions.

## **FIRST NATIONS PARTICIPATION**

For greater certainty, First Nations may participate at both a technical and political level as follows:

- a) Participation at the Completion Table and its subcommittees and working groups;
- b) Formal government liaison with the Process Manager;
- c) Technical liaison with the TPT;
- d) Participation in the Coast Information Team; and
- e) Review of the final plan as provided for in the Terms of Reference.

First Nation involvement will occur in accordance with any memoranda of understanding developed between individual First Nation governments and the Province. Such memoranda currently exist with the Heiltsuk Nation and member nations of the Kwakiutl District Council, Musgamag'w Tsawataineuk District Council, and the Tlowitsis Nation. In addition, some of the participating nations are signatories to a General Protocol Agreement on Planning and Interim Measures. Copies of these documents shall be provided to the Members of the Table where requested.

The above documents will take precedence over these Terms of Reference if there is any inconsistency between them concerning the relationship between the province and

the affected First Nation, unless the province and the affected First Nation agree otherwise.

## **PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT PARTICIPATION**

The provincial government will participate in the LRMP Process in two different capacities:

- a) Engaging in discussion and negotiation at the Table and subcommittee tables;
- b) Providing process and technical support, including plan document modifications for the Table and chairing or facilitation of subcommittees..

The government representative at the Tables will fully participate in discussions on interests and/or resource values falling within the provincial mandate. The Process team and TPT are expected to be independent of the government table member and in a manner consistent with best practices for collaborative processes.

## **GENERAL PUBLIC PARTICIPATION**

1. All meetings of the Completion Table shall be advertised in advance in local media.
2. Members of the public may participate in meetings as observers.
3. Observers shall not participate in discussion during plenary sessions of a Table meeting or in any determination of whether consensus exists with respect to any given matter.
4. The agenda for each meeting of the Completion Table shall provide for 30 minutes, generally at the end of the meeting (open period), where members of the public may address the Table.
5. Notification prior to the start of any Table meeting is required if a member of the public wants to address the Table during the open period. Time allotment is at the discretion of the Chair to those public members providing prior notification of intention to address the Table. If more than one member of the public wishes to address the Table during this period, such time allotments will be provided in an equitable manner.
6. Prior to the final draft LRMP being formalised and submission of the document to government, local open houses will be arranged. Where necessary, other local open houses will be arranged periodically to provide an opportunity for ongoing public input.
7. Copies of meeting notices, meeting agendas and meeting summaries and other information provided to members shall be routinely placed on an internet Web site for the LRMP for distribution to members and an the public.

## **GROUND RULES**

- a) **Completion Table Agreement and Ratification**

1. Agreement and ratification by all sectors will be sought for all recommendations made by the Completion Table with respect to land management and designation components of the draft plan.
2. Recommendations from the various subcommittees and working groups will be forwarded to the Completion Table by their chairs or facilitators for discussion and ratification at the Completion Table. Subcommittee recommendations may include a documentation of products for which there are agreements, disagreements and alternatives.
3. Completion Table agreement and ratification of products shall be determined by the Process Chair. This will be done by polling participants and asking if there is any disagreement with respect to the proposed decision or product being discussed. If there is not disagreement, the proposed decision or product will be considered ratified.
4. Where there is disagreement at the Table, this shall be explicitly noted in the meeting summary, and the Chair will recommend a resolution process to resolve the area(s) of disagreement.
5. Where the resolution process fails to provide agreement on the topic or product, then the Completion Table will be asked to ratify the areas of agreement and disagreement at the Table, and move on to other topics. The areas of disagreement, including alternative products, will be used by government at the end of the process to determine a final outcome.
6. If the Table ratifies a recommendation or package of recommendations at a meeting at which a sector or its representatives were not in attendance, then the recommendations will only be revisited at subsequent meetings if the Chair agrees that the circumstances surrounding lack of attendance warrant revisiting the recommendation(s).
7. All process decisions for subcommittee tables and the Completion Table will be made by the chair, in a manner consistent with best practices for collaborative processes.

**b) Meeting Agendas**

1. Prior to each meeting of the Completion Table, a draft agenda prepared under the direction of the Process Team shall be circulated. Meeting agendas will be circulated sufficiently in advance, along with any attachments, to allow for productive preparation and discussion at Table meetings.
2. The first item of business at each meeting of the Completion Table shall be review and approval of the draft agenda.

**c) Meeting Summaries**

1. Meeting summaries shall be prepared and distributed in a timely manner.
2. Draft meeting summaries shall be prepared under the direction of the Process Manager.
3. The second item of business at each meeting shall be a review and approval of the draft meeting summary prepared for the previous meeting.
4. Meeting summaries will be employed to capture attendance, identify issues and concerns, and record actions or decisions only.



5. Once approved, meeting summaries shall be made publicly available on the MSRM website dedicated to the LRMP.

**d) Conduct of Meetings**

1. Meetings shall begin promptly at the time indicated on the agenda.
2. The meetings shall be chaired in a manner that:
  - Ensures that time is allotted for discussion of each item on the agenda;
  - A balance of views and discussion takes place on each issue;
  - All participants have an opportunity to participate equally in discussion on a topic.
3. The meeting chair shall ensure that the manner in which each topic on the agenda is dealt with is clearly summarised at the conclusion of that discussion.
4. The Process Chair has the responsibility to facilitate Completion Table meetings. However, Completion Table members have the opportunity to make recommendations to the Process Chair on alternative facilitation for the Completion Table and for subcommittees.

**e) Conduct of Sector Representatives**

1. All sector representatives shall conduct themselves and discuss issues in a constructive manner which is respectful of other participants.
2. In order to maintain consistent representation at the Table, repeated absences from Table meetings may result in suspension of membership for that representative. In such a situation, the sector will be requested to identify a new representative/alternate.

**f) Mechanisms to Address Impasse**

1. In the event that a subcommittee or Completion Table reaches impasse on an issue or product, the table chair will provide for a process to resolve the impasse.
2. The TPT may be requested by the Process Manager or chair to assist in the resolution of issues through the exploration and/or application of technical and administrative solutions.
3. In the event that an impasse still remains after those steps referred to above have been pursued, then each party to the impasse shall describe in writing:
  - the specific nature of their concern that prevents them from agreeing to a proposed course of action;
  - the specific course(s) of action that could be taken to address their concern;
  - why this course(s) of action addresses their concern; and
  - why their concern is a matter of such principle that it requires them to withhold ratification.
4. This information will be forwarded by the table's chair to be used in subsequent steps, which may be further deliberations by the table, forwarding to the Completion Table, or forwarding to government as part of an overall package of recommendations.
5. The subcommittee or working group table may request the Process Chair to provide for mediation or facilitation services to assist in resolution of the impasse.

**g) Information**

1. Participants are encouraged to present any information or reports to the Process Facilitator or Chair for distribution that they believe may be helpful in pursuing the mandate of the LRMP Table.
2. The Table may request the TPT to review material provided or requested by the Table for technical accuracy, and provide critiques to the Table on such information when presented.
3. No information, reports or other documents shall be characterized as being sanctioned by the Central Coast LRMP process or Table until specifically agreed to by all members.

**h) Communications**

1. The work of the Table including all recommendations and reports generated by the Table and the outcome of individual meetings shall be made available to the public . The manner of distribution will be determined by the Process Chair, based on advice from the Table.
2. In all discussions with the public, media, or constituents, members and observers shall not attribute specific comments to specific individuals, nor characterise the perspectives, viewpoints or interests of others without their prior consent.
3. Any discussions with the public, media or constituents, including press releases, publications and internet activity related to planning and/or activities within the plan area, members and observers will include identification of contact information for the Process Chair and Process Manager and the MSRM website.

**i) Media**

1. The Process Manager shall be the government contact for all media inquiries.
2. In the event that members wish to respond to media inquiries, they are to speak from their own perspective and not that from the Table or from other sector representatives. In all cases, media will be provided with the Process Manager 's contact information.

## Map of Central Coast Plan Area Boundary



## Milestones for Completion Process

<b>TARGET DATE</b>	<b>REQUIRED PRODUCT</b>	<b>NOTES</b>
By December 31, 2001	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review report on map boundary resolution, map impact assessment;</li> <li>Ratify CPA, Option Area &amp; FN Lead Area boundaries from April 4 map;</li> <li>Confirm Table requirements from CIT;</li> <li>Confirm "1<sup>st</sup> layer" General Management Direction objectives &amp; strategies (GMDs) for immediate negotiation;</li> <li>Confirm working structures to achieve products, affirm socio-economic work activities, requirements.</li> </ul>	<p>Table needs update on new sectors, information team and needs to confirm negotiating groups, tasks &amp; members.</p> <p>Boundary endorsement required for govt legal designations. Confirm how CIT products will inform negotiations. Identify which GMDs from March 15 plan not tied to EBM work.</p>
By February 28, 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ratify draft 1<sup>st</sup> layer GMD objectives &amp; strategies for application to land base;</li> <li>Ratify associated map changes;</li> <li>Review socioeconomic work progress of CIT.</li> </ul>	Includes review of economic overview, transition work from CIT
By July 30, 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ratify 2<sup>nd</sup> layer GMDs (EBM related) based on EBM information and associated map changes;</li> <li>Review socioeconomic work progress of CIT;</li> <li>Review EBM pilot project information to refine GMDs &amp; develop draft area-specific strategies.</li> </ul>	<p>Requires small group negotiations to apply CIT &amp; pilot project information to April 4 map and to Interim Draft GMD statements.</p> <p>Differentiation required for some areas on map, relative to GMDs applicable to entire base.</p>
By October 15, 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review regional ecological analysis of CIT &amp; pilot project results;</li> <li>Use to ratify zone-specific or area specific objectives and strategies, associated map and any related GMD adjustments</li> <li>Commence SEEA work to document impacts of draft work &amp; alternative views.</li> </ul>	Pilot projects on EBM and visuals to refine area-specific strategies and GMDs, map. Address removal of Part 13 for Option Areas as required.
By December 15, 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review and ratify draft plan and map for public review process, based on SEEA work and transition strategy recommendations.</li> </ul>	Incorporates assessment of coastal plan compatibility, and SEEA assessment of draft plan and resultant changes
By February 28, 2003	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ratify changes recommended from open houses, local govt &amp; FN technical review;</li> <li>Forward draft plan for review with associated areas of agreement &amp; disagreement.</li> </ul>	Address changes or issues raised in public review process. Government decision to be assisted by documented alternatives & SEEA work.
By March 31, 2003	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ratify draft plan document to be recommended to government.</li> </ul>	Approval process to include political review and approvals by local govt, First Nations, federal & provincial govt.

## Central Coast LRMP Completion Table - Sectors and Representatives

---

<b>Sector</b>	<b>Table representative</b>	<b>Alternate</b>
Conservation	Dennis Crockford	Amanda Carr
Labour	Darol Smith	Bob Freer
South Communities	Mayor Larry Pepper	Mayor Gerry Furney
Heiltsuk First Nation	Dean Wilson	Chief Ross Wilson
Recreation	Ray Pillman / Tim Walters	Gary Ullstrom
Tlowitis First Nation	Dallas Smith	
KDC/MTTC/TN	Merv Child	
Kwakiutl District Council	Chief Tom Nelson	
Wuikinuxv	Chief Alex Chartrand	Clifford Hanuse
Nuxalk	Mark Moody	Chief Anfinn Siwallace
Major Forest Companies	Hans Granander	Gerry Fraser
Small Business Forestry	Lloyd Juhala	Don Bendickson
Tourism	Ric Careless	Jennifer Case
Energy and Minerals	Brian Welchman	Bruce McKnight
North Local Communities	Patricia McKim	Phil Parr
Province	Wally Eamer	
Federal Government	Midori Nicholson	

## Plan Vision Statement (year 2050)

---

Our coastal community is a place of harmony and balance. We have recognized the threads that connect communities to the environment and have achieved a balance between the needs of people and the need to sustain natural values. We seek to maintain a healthy marine and terrestrial environment; managing resources so that future generations are healthy and may prosper.

Our plans reflect this change toward a closer relationship with our environment. Rather than hurrying forward to a new future, we have learned from each others experiences and our shared past; a past when we left a smaller ecological footprint.

Our communal strength is drawn from the biological, cultural diversity that surrounds us and based on an underlying respect for all the ecological, economic, spiritual and social values of the Central Coast. We are empowered and self-reliant. Our voice is clear, strong and understood.

This vision is captured by the Harmony Sun symbol created for the LRMP process

1. Governance:  
First Nations, regional, local, provincial and federal governments are working together with respect and within mutually agreed upon integrated jurisdictions and responsibilities.
2. Population:  
The population of the Central Coast has significantly increased since 1998, especially that of First Nations.
3. Relationships and Cultures:  
First Nations culture and language is recognized as a dynamic and living expression of the traditions of the past. Spiritual values of all are respected and accommodated in daily transactions and at special occasions and places.
4. Communities:  
A safe living environment, satisfactory and affordable housing, quality education and technology, recreational opportunities, responsive and convenient healthcare and current/appropriate infrastructure (i.e. water, power, sewer, and transportation) is available to all communities.
5. Employment Opportunities:  
The economy of the Central Coast is vibrant and provides all residents with the opportunity to maintain a healthy family income while sustaining the resources and values necessary to support communities.
6. Forestry:  
The forest is being managed to produce timber and increasingly for a full range of values and activities (biodiversity, visual quality, recreation, botanicals, ecotourism, medicines and spiritual needs) on a long-term sustainable basis. The Forest Industry, including local manufacturing, continues to be a major source of income for the region.
7. Marine Environment:

A marine plan, including Marine Protection Areas forms the basis for marine management. The marine plan was developed in stages and continues to be reviewed and improved as experience is gained and as scientific knowledge is advanced and expanded.

The marine environment is being used for the sustainable harvest of fish and other marine species, for recreation and for transportation. There is a greater emphasis on local, value-added processing of harvested marine species.

8. Fish:  
Fish are abundant as a result of the continuing co-operative and effective management of habitat and harvesting efforts support community fishing and processing.
9. Recreation and Tourism:  
The Central Coast's world class recreation resources support a sustainable, locally managed and controlled tourism industry.
10. Wilderness:  
There are substantial areas of wilderness and wilderness values within the plan area.
11. Wildlife:  
Wildlife is abundant due to co-operative, effective management and respect for its intrinsic values. Wildlife habitat has been and is being preserved and enhanced, with special attention given to indicator species such as grizzly bears and salmon.
12. Agriculture:  
Agriculture land provides fresh produce, meat and other agricultural products for central coast communities.
13. Aquaculture  
Aquaculture opportunities provide for the sustainable harvest of marine species without affecting wild stocks.
14. Minerals  
Exploration and development of metal and industrial minerals provides an important benefit to locally diversified economies. An improved geoscience database has attracted new private investment and resulted in new discoveries.
15. Energy  
Energy development opportunities are available for development and supply of local needs. The Central Coast residents participate in and derive social and economic benefit from potential development of offshore oil and gas resources.

## Appendix 3 – Motions of the Completion Table

---

**Motions of the Completion Table includes:**

- only those motions adopted by the Table and that relate directly to the final Table recommendations to the Province and First Nations;
- are taken from CCLRMP Completion Table minutes of the December 6, 2001 to December 8, 2003 meetings;
- include notations on which sectors may have abstained from the motion;
- include notations on whether the motion was impacted or superseded by the December 9 Agreement In Principle.



<b>Recommendations Document section</b>	<b><u>December 8 -10, 2003</u></b>
1.0 Introduction	The CCLRMP Completion Table receives the proposal presented by the Major Forestry and Terrestrial Conservation Sectors for consideration.
	The Table endorses the map as representative of forestry and conservation interests regarding protection areas, subject to agreement on the broader package
	Province abstained since the map went beyond the known draft First Nations LUPs (Kitasoo, Gitga'at, and Wuikinux) <i>KDC/MTTC/T abstained as it went beyond the April 2001 map</i>
3.0 EBM zones 2.0 EBM 6.0 Implementation 6.0 Implementation 6.0 Implementation	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the December 9, 2003 CFCI/RSP agreement and directs the Process Team to amend previous CCLRMP motions, recommendations and decisions regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Land use Zoning Map</li> <li>• Ecosystem Based Management</li> <li>• Transition</li> <li>• Adaptive Management</li> <li>• Implementation through the EBM Council</li> </ul> <p>So that these previous CCLRMP decisions are consistent with the December 9, 2003 CFCI/RSP agreement. The following elements of the CFCI/RSP agreement are considered to be private and will not be incorporated in the final document:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clause 1,</li> <li>• 3,</li> <li>• 6b (delete last sentence),</li> <li>• 30</li> <li>• 31 (modify to read: the Table recommends that the EBM Council revisit these management targets within 1 year.)</li> <li>• 32</li> </ul>
4.2.7 Access and Facilities GMD	That the CCLRMP Completion Table adopt the Access and Facilities Management Goals, Objectives and Strategies package dated December 8, 2003
4.2.10 Guide Outfitting, Hunting and Trapping GMD	That the CCLRMP Completion Table adopt the Guide Outfitting, Hunting and Trapping Goals, Objectives and Strategies package dated December 8, 2003.
4.0	<p>The following process is recommended by the LRMP Objectives and Strategies working group for completion of the remaining LRMP Objectives and Strategies packages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Completion Table completes its decision making on EBM and plan area zone map.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Process Team completes the remaining LRMP Objectives and Strategies packages to reflect Completion Table recommendations and motions passed by the Table.</li> <li>• The Process Team refers to a complete integrated package of draft GMDs to sector representatives for comment prior to inclusion in the LRMP document.</li> <li>• Final GMD package comes to a meeting called by the Chair for sector endorsement.</li> </ul>
	Motion to receive the Gitga'at summary working draft Land Use Plan.
4.2.6 Communities GMD	<p>Whereas the CCLRMP employment target is to reach a national average, the CCLRMP Plan includes the following commitments to labour and resource dependent communities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No net job loss or better</li> <li>• Create new employment and phase in EBM as we create new employment and a new economy</li> <li>• Provide for transition through EBM Council mandate</li> <li>• Provide funding for encouraging value added employment</li> <li>• If forest industry, tourism, mining and other employment does not achieve no net job loss or better this will trigger more intensive adaptive management efforts through the EBM Council, for example socially responsible investment fund, coast sustainability funding, federal, provincial and local government funding.</li> </ul>
5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>Given the new land use designations coming from the LRMP and subject to government to government negotiations and the creation and allocation of new, First Nation and community forest tenure, it is expected that tenure/chart allocation will require adjustment and reorganization.</p> <p>New tenure and existing holders will have to be accommodated on the land base in a fair and equitable manner.</p> <p>Therefore, the LRMP table recommends that government ensures community forestry interests are addressed in this reorganization and allocation of operating areas.</p>
5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>That the Table support by way of motion an area based forest tenure that is representative of a land base that will contribute to the long term economic and human well being of Inner Central Coast people through, but not exclusive to:</p> <p>forest harvesting, manufacturing; and, value added product development initiatives</p> <p><i>Province Abstained</i></p>
3.2 EBM zone descriptions	<p>Whereas the CCLRMP completion table has recommended 3 broad classifications of land.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Existing parks, and 2001 CPAs, which are coloured green, pink and orange and known as CONSERVANCIES/PARKS</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dec 9 added protection areas, coloured teal, known as Biodiversity Areas and;</li> <li>• EBM Operating Areas, coloured white.</li> </ul> <p>THEREFORE this table agrees:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conservancies/Parks, are normal parks which disallow forestry, mining, hydro-electric generation</li> <li>• Biodiversity Areas, are areas where forestry and hydro-electric activities are not permitted, but mineral exploration and mining are permitted as the zone is considered part of the Mineral Zone, of the “2-zone system for Mineral Exploration and mining in BC”, in accordance with EBM</li> <li>• EBM Operating Areas are also put in the mineral zone are fully open to forestry, mining, and hydro-electric activities in accordance with EBM.</li> </ul> <p><i>Terrestrial Conservation abstained</i></p>
6.0 Implementation	<p>The CCLRMP Table adopts the Institutional Arrangements for the EBM Council and the EBM Science Team described in Schedule D of the proposal dated December 9, 2003 of the Forestry Major and Terrestrial Conservation sectors, with the following addition:</p> <p>That the EBM Council members be given individual responsibilities for representing and providing liaison with sectors within the present LRMP (or their successors), e.g. the member responsible for community perspective, or the member responsible for conservation perspective would also represent the public recreation sector, etc.</p>
6.0 Implementation	<p>The Table recommends that a CCLRMP implementation and monitoring (IM) committee be set after the final plan is announced. The CCRLMP IM committee will be composed of interested representatives of each sector involved in the LRMP Completion Table and will have the following responsibilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• review progress of the implementation of the CCLRMP</li> <li>• report to governments and the public through the EBM Council</li> <li>• support public involvement processes related to implementation.</li> </ul>
5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>Whereas the recommendations of the CCLRMP are based on certain expectations, we anticipate that adoption of our recommendations will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enhance the ecological, economic and social conditions of the region</li> <li>• lead to greater stability in the forest sector in the region</li> <li>• improve investment in the region in all sectors</li> <li>• see markets for tourism, forestry, mining, and other products respond positively to these developments now and into the future</li> </ul> <p>Table participants commit to ensuring that these expectations are met.</p>
	<b><u>November 26 to 28, 2003</u></b>
4.2.13 – Visuals Management GMD	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the visual management recommendations as developed by the Tourism and Major Forestry Sector including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Visual Management Zone descriptions and prescriptions:</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Wild</li> <li>○ Natural Variability</li> <li>○ Landscape Forestry</li> <li>○ Special</li> <li>• The accompanying visual zone maps dated November 25, 2003</li> <li>• Recommending that the visual zonation system replace the formal VQC system within the Central Coast plan area.</li> </ul> <p><i>First Nations Abstained</i></p>
4.0 - GMDs	The CCLRMP Completion Table supports the Tourism and Major Forestry Sectors' efforts in establishing a long term relationship through the development of agreements and protocols with First Nations and local communities.
6.0 Implementation	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the Flexibility Policy related to Ecosystem-Based Management as developed by the Coastal First Nations of the Turning Points Initiative and the Kwakiutl District Council/ Musgamagw Tsawataineuk Tribal Council/Tlowitsis Nation
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts section 2.5.1 (Conservation Planning) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) subject to the following clarification:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reserves are specific to forest resources.</li> <li>• Reserves do not preclude mineral exploration or development (two zone). However, if a reserve loses function due to mineral development, that function is recaptured elsewhere.</li> <li>• Resources refer to surface forest resources.</li> <li>• Reserves can include young stands for the future recruitment of ecological values.</li> <li>• Reserves are intended to be permanent, but location and size can change over time based on new information (i.e. adaptive management) and subject to the objective and intent of the reserve.</li> </ul> <p>Note: the background government piece defining two-zone mineral policy is included as an appendix to this motion.</p> <p><i>Conservation Sector abstained</i></p>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the concept of ecological risk management as recommended by the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) involving specifically:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification of indicators for key management objectives.</li> <li>• Development of curves relating indicator values to risk.</li> <li>• Identification of thresholds which aid risk interpretation, and using these to develop management targets. Thresholds should be based on best available science. Management targets should balance environmental and human well being.</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the concept of Cumulative Risk Management as recommended by the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) involving specifically the assignment of risk management targets to all areas within all planning levels, including territory/ subregion, landscape, watershed and site / stand.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implementation involves assignment of risk targets for landscape units and watersheds which make up the unit.</li> <li>• <i>Stand / site level targets will adhere to landscape / watershed level planning targets. ( <b>May be superseded by the December 9 AIP</b> )</i></li> <li>• Requires specific methodology for apportioning risk over different spatial scales (to be developed by EBM Council based on consultation with handbook authors and others in order to capture intent in handbook).</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts concept of Planning Functions as recommended by the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) which states that planning is an ongoing interactive approach with assessment, design, integration, and implementation.
4.2.6 Communities GMD	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the following socio-economic target clarifications at a territorial/ subregional scale:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Achieve and maintain national average employment levels in plan area communities. The target is to achieve this within 5 years, tested against milestones every year.</li> <li>• Achieve and maintain national average wage levels and employment benefits in plan area communities within 5 years, tested against milestones every year.</li> <li>• Stable or growing population trend in plan area communities over the next five years.</li> <li>• Economic diversification within and between natural resource sectors:</li> <li>• More even distribution of employment across sectors over the next five years. (Indicator: number of employees in each natural resource sector.)</li> <li>• Increase Central Coast GDP, by an average of 5% per year. This includes suppliers and workers outside the plan area.</li> <li>• Table recommends that each community within the plan area develop a target and time frame for capturing a portion of resource revenues generated in their area.</li> </ul>
6.0 Implementation	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts section 7.1 (Transition, planning for change) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003).</p> <p><i>Clarification:</i></p> <p>The EBM Council (as part of the Adaptive Co Management section 3.4 of the EBM Handbook), in the spirit of the CCLRMP and EBM, will, as first priority, further develop and implement the Table transition strategy, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes if required to current thresholds arising from peer reviews and new science and adaptive management results, and recommendations to governments for possible implications to existing management targets;</li> <li>• Phasing in EBM into forest harvesting planning processes;</li> <li>• Identifying priority areas for further testing of EBM;</li> <li>• Identifying priority areas for setting landscape objectives;</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Developing an adaptive management program including monitoring and evaluation.</li> </ul> <p>The Table recognizes that some development may proceed according to the Transition strategy without full implementation of EBM planning and assessment requirements. The intent is that new inventories and assessments will be included as they are developed.</p> <p>The EBM Council (as part of the Adaptive Co Management section 3.4 of the EBM Handbook), in the spirit of the CCLRMP and EBM, will propose to governments management requirements for community restoration.</p> <p>The EBM Council is the custodian of EBM.</p> <p><i>The implementation of this motion will be guided by the December 9 AIP</i></p> <p><i>The implementation of this motion will be guided by the December 9 AIP</i></p>
6.0 Implementation	<p>That the CCLRMP Table include the covenant as presented in the Terms of Reference of the proposed EBM Council.</p> <p><b>EBM Council - Covenant of Trust</b></p> <p><b>As recommended by the CCLRMP Table Members</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ That a Covenant of Trust be designed that will support flexible, responsible principles of EBM</li> <li>➤ That the Covenant be developed to include long term stewardship principles that promotes management with exemplary governance principles</li> <li>➤ That the EBM Council will be a non-political council</li> <li>➤ That the EBM Council accepts full responsibility for stewardship of EBM in the Plan Area</li> <li>➤ That the EBM Council guide EBM planning through informed decision making while recognizing that the ecosystem and all human communities health and well being will be part of the councils responsibilities</li> </ul> <p><i>The implementation of this motion will be guided by the December 9 AIP</i></p>
5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>The added cost of EBM will be fully recognized either as a cost allowance in the current appraisal system or as recognized cost under the Market Pricing System.</p> <p><i>Government noting that support did not bind the Province.</i></p>
5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>The CCLRMP representatives support the need of the member nations of the KDC/MTTC/TN to access funds from the Province for land use plans.</p> <p><i>Province abstained</i></p>
	<b>November 12 to 14, 2003</b>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the following clarifications to be made on the overall implementation of the LRMP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is technical and political leadership committed to implementing adaptive management</li> <li>• There is a commitment to fundamental systemic change in how resource management is undertaken within both government and industry including a commitment to changing regulatory and policy mechanisms and retraining for staff</li> <li>• The stumpage system is reviewed on an ongoing basis to address</li> </ul>

5.0 Additional Table Recommendations	<p>costs of implementing EBM (Stumpage rates will reflect the increased cost of operating under EBM on the Central Coast under the new market based system)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The LRMP document use positive language based on EBM principles/goals. (refer to examples from section 7.1 of the EBM Handbook)</li> <li>• Additional language be developed for the management of areas with ecological deficits.</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts section 3.1 ( Planning Scales)of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) subject to the planning scales clarification document (Scale / Document Map scale / Prime Responsibility)
6.0 Implementation	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts section 3.4 (Adaptive Co-Management) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) subject to the following clarifications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• on the concepts around table 3.4 but not the detail</li> <li>• governance structure - i.e. There is an established mechanism and/or institution for compliance and effectiveness monitoring (and/or auditing) of active and passive adaptive management, making decisions about and reporting the results of adaptive management;</li> <li>• includes ecological, social, and economic indicators</li> <li>• requires a procedure for monitoring and reporting on learning through experience i.e. assess existing models (e.g. Weyco)</li> <li>• Applied with scientific rigour and cost effectiveness</li> <li>• Where adaptive management is used as a means of testing the efficacy of recommended EBM requirements, experiments avoid risk to critical habitats and rare ecosystems and species -- does not preclude testing or experiments in critical habitat under scientific rigour</li> <li>• The cost of adaptive management is to be shared among those benefiting directly or indirectly from the experiment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ adequate resources are made available</li> <li>○ Adaptive management that addresses EBM thresholds and targets is the prime responsibility of government.</li> <li>○ Adaptive management that addresses management practices within the EBM thresholds and targets is the primary responsibility of proponents. A program of adaptive management, including budgets, should be agreed upon by all benefactors of the program.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>"Benefactors" is defined as only those proponents who benefit and have the prime responsibility for the management of the resources.</p>
4.2.4 Grizzly Bear GMDs	<p>The Table recommends that the Khutze Benchmark and the Ahnuhati Core GBMAs be established with the following conditions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Activities such as Mining, Forestry and Tourism are permitted in the non-protection area of the GBMAs consistent with EBM and GMDs, with no additional management constraints;</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Land based grizzly bear viewing is permitted consistent with GMDs, adaptive management and EBM;</li> <li>3. 10-year sunset clause: GBMA can be continued only if the Minister of Water, Land and Air decides to renew it for another 10 years;</li> <li>4. The Hunting regulations will be annotated to include the GBMA restrictions;</li> <li>5. In the case that a large number of grizzly bears become habituated an appropriate management response will be taken.</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: This motion only deals with portions of the Khutze GBMA which occur in the Central Coast plan area.</i></p>
3.0 EBM zones	<p>Bond Sound - Turn area back into EBM operating area subject to Tourism and Major Forestry sectors reporting back on visuals and the mining sectors participation</p> <p><i>FN abstained, Motion approved.</i></p>
	<b>October 29 to 30, 2003</b>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 2.5.2 (Socioeconomic Planning) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003).
	Wherever examples related to EBM are provided for illustration purposes only, the value X will be used in the place of any numeric value
6.0 Implementation	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 2.5.6 (Monitoring) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) with the amendment that:</p> <p>A budget be developed and approved.</p>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 2.5.7 (Knowledge and Information Management) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) with the amendments that:</p> <p>Proprietary and confidential nature of information should be respected and information sharing protocols be developed.</p>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 3.2 (Planning across Scales) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003)
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 4.1 (Territories/Subregions: Overview) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003)
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 4.2 (Key Characteristics) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) with the following amendment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Human wellbeing of communities located outside the plan area is important.</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 4.3 (Territory/Subregional Planning) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October



	<p>15, 2003) with the following amendments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local government should be added to the description of coordinating body responsible for implementation;</li> <li>• Implementation needs to consider how thresholds are set, changed or are modified based on risk levels and results of adaptive management assessments;</li> <li>• Assessment phase can proceed with best available information;</li> <li>• Integration phase needs to assess impacts to socioeconomic values.</li> </ul> <p><i>The implementation of this motion will be guided by the December 9 AIP</i></p>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 5.1 (Landscape and Watershed Overview) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003)
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 5.2 (Landscape and Watershed Key Characteristics) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) with the following amendments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bullet 1 strike “as necessary”</li> <li>• Bullet 3 strike second and third sentence.</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table adopt section 5.4 (Watershed Planning) of the CIT EBM Handbook document peer review draft (October 15, 2003) with the following amendments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• P33 strike “Planning is primarily technical”,</li> <li>• P33 strike must be consulted “as necessary” from first paragraph, add “communities” to list of those to be consulted,</li> <li>• P33Design Bullet 2 add identify “and include” additional reserves.</li> </ul>
Process Development	<p>The Table requests that a working group be established to carry out the following:</p> <p>Given that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The CCLRMP Table has agreed that Ecosystem-based management will be the approach that is used for land use planning within the CCLRMP plan area and that,</li> <li>2. The CCLRMP Table has endorsed the principles, goals and objectives of the Ecosystem-based management Framework,</li> <li>3. That the CCLRMP Table acknowledges the Ecosystem-based management Handbook as a key reference tool to develop general management directions (GMDs) and the CCLRMP document, but recognises that it does not address all aspects of the LRMP document. GMDs will be informed by the Ecosystem-based Management Handbook and other sources.</li> </ol> <p>Within the above context, the working group will take the motions, comments and issues raised, and attempt to agree on an amended motion that can be recommended back to the CCLRMP planning table for the November 12, 2003 CCLRMP meeting.</p>

	<b><u>October 8 to 9, 2003</u></b>
2.0 EBM	The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts sections 1 – 4 of the CIT EBM Framework document draft 3 (Jan 27, 2003) under peer review. Move section 3.4 to 3.1 and adjust the sequencing accordingly.
	<b><u>September 23 to 25 - No applicable motions</u></b>
	<b><u>September 10 to 12 - No applicable motions</u></b>
	<b><u>July 22 to 24, 2003</u></b>
4.2.5 and 4.2.9 Water and NTFP GMDs	Be it Resolved that the SEA/EBM Sub-Committee recommends that the Completion Table adopt the Objectives and Strategies for the Water and Non-timber Forest Products elements of the CCLRMP <i>Abstentions KDC/MTTC/TN</i>
	<b><u>May 29 to 30, 2003</u></b>
	BE IT RESOLVED THAT: the Completion Table recommends an extension to March 31 2004 of the Orders In Council, Environment and Land Use Act and Part 13 of the Forest Act for all Goal 1, Candidate Protection Areas and Option Areas with in the Plan area.  BE IT FURTHER RESOLVED THAT: individual Option Areas may be rescinded upon successful conclusions of government negotiations provided that the provincial government fully consults with and receives guidance from the Completion Table.
	BE IT RESOLVED THAT: The SEA/EBM Sub-Committee recommends the Completion Table accept the Subsurface and Aggregates and the Communities Objectives and Strategies, as agreed to on May 7, 2003, subject to revising Communities “Objective C – Individual Wealth” and Infrastructure re: sport and community facilities.
3.2.1 Protection Areas	BE IT RESOLVED THAT: the CPA Sub-Committee recommend the Completion Table ratification of the following Protected Areas Management Directions May 6 <sup>th</sup> , 2003: Racey Inlet and Estero Basin.
	BE IT RESOLVED THAT: The CPA working group supports government putting into place “No Staking Reserves” on all Goal 2 areas with boundaries ratified by the Completion Table.
	BE IT RESOLVED THAT: the following recommendation of the CPA Working Group be accepted:  CPA WORKING GROUP RECOMMENDATION: Dean River and Estuary <i>“The North Communities proposal to revise the Dean River and Estuary Candidate protected area presented at the May 27, 2003 CPA Working Group meeting is recommended to the Completion Table Meeting, subject to:</i>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Subcommittee review of protection area management direction statement</i></li> <li><i>The provincial government briefing the Subcommittee on</i></li> </ul>

	<i>the environmental values of the North Communities' proposal and the existing CPA boundary and rationale."</i>
	<b><u>March 5, 2003</u> No motions applicable</b>
	<b><u>December 5, 2002</u></b>
1.2 Process Overview	<p>"The Collaborative Option, with amendments agreed to by the Table Members be forwarded to Minister Stan Hagen for consideration" The amendments are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Government to Government negotiations to take place after the Completion Table concludes on June 30, 2003</li> </ul> <p>Existing Orders In Council remain in effect until December 31, 2003 <i>Abstention, Provincial Government Sector Rep.)</i></p>
3.2.1 Protection Areas	<p>The boundary for the Boat Bay and Goat Cove Goal 2 Protection Area presented at the November 27, 2002 CPA Working Group meeting be recommended to the Completion Table.</p> <p>MOTION PASSED (<i>Abstentions on Goat Cove: Major Forestry, Labour and First Nations</i>)</p>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>That the CPA Sub-committee recommend the Completion Table ratification of an additional protection area encompassing Gillard Island, Jimmy Judd island and associated Islets as identified on November 27, 2002."</p> <p><i>Abstentions, First Nations</i></p>
	<p>That the CPA Sub-committee recommend the Completion Table ratification of the Goal Two Summary Protection Areas Management Directions as revised on November 27, 2002.</p> <p><i>Abstentions, First Nations</i></p>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table supports the Heiltsuk / Weyco trial, as recommended by the EBM Development working group on November 13, 2002, subject to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The Heiltsuk supporting the trial and,</li> <li>▪ Weyerhaeuser and the Conservation Sector amending the proposal to include as many components of the EBM Framework as possible."</li> </ul>
2.0 EBM	<p>The CCLRMP Completion Table supports Gitga' at / Triumph Timber proposal for an EBM Trial in Fraser Reach, as recommended by the EBM Development working group on November 13, 2002</p>
	<b><u>October 23 to 24</u></b>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>The boundary for the Estero Basin goal 1 protected area presented at the October 10, 2002 CPA Working Group meeting is recommended to the Completion Table Meeting. Subject to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The visual boundary for the operational area be defined;</li> <li>2. Forest development activities for the operational area take place outside the June 15<sup>th</sup> to September 15<sup>th</sup> tourism window</li> <li>3. An access corridor to the operational area be provided.</li> </ol>

	4. The definition of a collaborative process for accommodating exceptional forest operational issues during the tourism window.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	The boundary for the Forward Harbour goal 2 area presented at the October 10, 2002 CPA Working Group meeting be recommended to the Completion Table Meeting. Subject to application of Retention Visual Quality Objective on the south side of Forward Harbour above the recommended protection area boundary.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the CPA Sub-committee recommend the Completion Table ratification of the following Protected Areas Management Directions: Ape Lake, Broughton Extension, Cape Caution, Clayton Falls, Catto Creek, Hotsprings/No Name Creek, Lockhart/Gordon, Pooley Island, Price Swindle, Klinaklini, and Smokehouse.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the CPA Sub-committee recommend the Completion Table ratification of the following Protected Areas Management Directions for the Chapple / Cornwall, Dean River & Corridor, KITASOO Spirit Bear and the Koeys CPAs.
	<b><u>July 8 &amp; 9, 2002</u></b>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the following CPA boundaries which have been agreed to by the CPA working group be ratified by the Completion Table. : Bella Coola Estuary, Bentinck Estuaries, Genessee Wetland, Kilbella/Chuckwalla Estuary, Kimsquit Estuary, Kingcome Estuary, Kliniklini Estuary, Kwatna Estuary, Phillips Estuary, Nekite Estuary, Seymour Estuary, Sheemahant Wetland, Skowquiltz Estuary, Stafford Estuary, Thurston Bay Extension, Wakeman Estuary. Safe access requirements to be addressed as agreed in Phase 1 CCLRMP draft document.  <i>MOTION PASSED Oweekeno Abstained</i>
	The Chair, on behalf of the Completion Table, will write to Kathy Chopik, Ministry of Sustainable Resource Management, to ask why a First Nations Representative was not included in the Advisory Board to the Trustee membership. The Completion Table wishes to convey that it is adamant that at least one Advisory Board member be a First Nations person from the affected area.
1.2 Process Overview	That the table recommend July 18, 2002 changes to the Completion Table and Working Group meeting schedules, to reflect the extension of the CCLRMP process to June 30, 2003.
1.2 Process Overview	That the table recommend July 18, 2002 changes to the workplan to reflect the extension of the CCLRMP process to June 30, 2003 subject to satisfaction of participation funding for First Nations.
2.0 EBM	Whereas the implementation of pilot projects are critical to the success of the LRMP process, the Table directs that government work with interested sectors and the appropriate First Nations to prepare pilot projects which will: 1. Test the practical application of Ecosystem Based Management

	<p>2. Create employment</p> <p>These pilot projects are to be prepared for consideration by the Completion Table on or before the next Completion Table meeting.</p>
	<b><u>May 2, 2002</u></b>
1.2 Process Overview	<p>That the table recommend changes to the Terms of Reference as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The timeline for final draft LRMP preparation be changed from Dec 2002 to March 31, 2003.</li> <li>• The plan completion date be changed from March 2003 to June 2003, to provide for incorporation of final CIT and FN information. The Completion Table to remain operational for this time period.</li> </ul> <p>A Service agreement be set up between the Chair of the CCLRMP and the CIT Management Committee, to confirm information deliverables and their timelines.</p>
1.2 Process Overview	<p>The Working Group has made progress on this issue but has not completed these negotiations. The Working Group requests that the Completion Table agree to an extension of the Part 13 abeyance until the July 2002 Table meeting. The forest licensees will confirm by letter their commitment not to operate in the area for the period May 2002 – June 2003, unless an agreement is reached that would allow operations to proceed.</p> <p>Forest Development planning may proceed during this period (May 02 – June 03) but will not include the critical visual area in Bond Sound, until agreement has been reached between the sectors on a VQO or designation that will preserve the existing wilderness experience in that area. It is further agreed that if there is no agreement reached on this area, licensees will not claim compensation for costs associated with engineering and survey costs that may be incurred in the critical visual area.</p>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>The Goal 2 areas presented at the March 28, 2002 CPA Working Group meeting be recommended to the Completion Table Meeting in May 2002. Recommendations are: Lady Douglas/Oliver Cove, Eucott Bay, Carter Bay, Clyak, Quatlena, Restoration Bay, Racey Inlet, Troup Passage, Rescue Bay. Safe access requirements to be addressed as agreed in phase 1 CCLRMP draft document</p>
	<p>In view of the extension of the LRMP completion time frame to July 2003, the LRMP table recognises the seriousness of the effects of a 3-month delay on the forest industry. The table further reconfirms support of the Completion table minutes of December 7, 2001 supporting the development of pilot projects in Option Areas.</p>
	<b><u>February 21, 2002</u></b>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>Be it resolved that the Cape Caution Area Boundary be ratified as per the CPA Committee's recommendation.</p> <p><i>ABSTAINED: KDC/MTTC/T First Nations will pursue CPAs through parallel government-to- government discussions.</i></p>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>Be it resolved that the CCLRMP Table ratify, today, Pooley Island being submitted to Cabinet for OIC with the first "OIC package" subject to the Major</p>

	Forestry and Terrestrial Conservation Sectors agreeing on Protection or Option Area designation within the overall external boundary as shown on the April 4, 2001 CCLRMP Map shown at the February 21, 2002 Table meeting. Failure to resolve the issue in a reasonable timeframe will result in the Chair engaging a mediator to pursue resolution.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>Be it resolved that the Goal 2 areas presented at the February 21, 2002 Table meeting be ratified as per the CPA Committee Recommendation including Burdwood Group, Deserters &amp; Walker Group, Numas Island, Polkinghorn, Barry Islet, Yorke Isl., Smithers Isl., Admiral Group, Creey Isl, Cullen Harbour, Dodwell Isl., Horsfall Isl, Miles Isl., Prince Group, Princess Alice Isl., Tribal Group, Codville Extension, McMullen Group, Port John Arch Site, Thorsen Creek</p> <p><i>ABSTAINED: KDC/MTTC/T will pursue CPAs through parallel government-to-government discussions.</i></p>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	<p>Be it resolved that the CPA Committee be tasked with drafting guiding principles for acceptable uses within Protection Areas.</p> <p>Be it resolved that the Goal 1 and Goal 2 CPAs that have been ratified by the Table on this day be forwarded to Cabinet for declaration through OIC by March 25<sup>th</sup>, and that this will initiate the delivery of compensation and mitigation delivery in short order.</p> <p><i>ABSTAINED: KDC/MTTC/T agreed with the intent behind the motion but is unsure whether he can approve with respect to ongoing government-to-government relations.</i></p> <p><i>ABSTAINED: Conservation Sector agrees with intent.</i></p>
	<b><u>December 6 to 8, 2001</u></b>
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the boundaries of the following Candidate Protection Areas for legal designation (OIC) be ratified: Ahnuhati Complex, Broughton Extension, Catto Creek; Dean River Estuary and Corridor, Hanson Island, Khutze, Koeye; Smither Island; Price/Swindle; Racey Inlet; Spirit Bear; Upper Kimsquit; Upper Klinaklini; Chapple/Cornwall.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the Table ratify the boundaries of the following Option areas as outlined on the April 4, 2001 map: Ashlum/Reeve/Upper Inziana; Cascade/Sutslem; Deer Lake; Elizabeth lake; Green/Sheep Passage; Helmcken; Jump Across; Klekane Aaltanhash; Neekas; Roscoe; Tolmie; Western/McPherson; Whalen.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the Table ratify the Surf Inlet Option Area boundary adjustment as proposed.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the Table ratify the Ape Lake CPA boundary adjustment as proposed.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	That the Table ratify the Clayton Falls CPA boundary adjustment as proposed.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	Ickna – that the table ratify Option area boundary change as noted on the December 7 map.
3.2.1. Protection	Smokehouse – that the table ratify Protection area boundary change as

Areas	presented by the TPT on December 7.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	Lockhart Gordon (CPA) / Piper-Sandell (Option area) – that the Table ratify the boundary change and Protection area as noted on the December 7 map.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	Hotsprings / Noname Creeks – ratify boundary change to create Option Areas.
3.2.1. Protection Areas	Subject to Bella Coola Community confirming status of drainage south of Hotsprings Creek as a Protection Area by December 21 <sup>st</sup> , 2001; Lockhart / Gordon boundary to move as outlined by the TPT December 7 <sup>th</sup> .

## Appendix 4 – Agreement in Principle (Dec 9/03)



# **CFCI/RSP AGREEMENT PROPOSED SOLUTION**

**December 9, 2003**

## **AGREEMENT**

1. This document represents an agreement between CFCI companies and RSP ENGOS.
2. This agreement is based on the entire package of recommendations – parties should not be taken to agree with individual components on a stand-alone basis.
3. CFCI and RSP agree to recommend the following package as a solution by to the Central Coast Table.

## **FIRST NATIONS**

4. CFCI and RSP acknowledge that recommendations from the CCLRMP are subject to government-to-government negotiations.
5. CFCI and RSP acknowledge that final land use decisions will be the product of government-to-government negotiations between the province and each of the coastal First Nations.

## **PROTECTION AREAS**

6. For those areas identified as Protection Areas on the map attached as Schedule “A”, and as further described in the Protection Area Summary Matrix attached as Schedule “B”, CFCI and RSP recommend that they receive protection status:
  - a) This recommendation incorporates the map notations described in the Protection Area Summary Matrix;
  - b) Within the limited purview of this agreement, subject only to aboriginal rights and title, protection status precludes forestry operations from conducted in these areas. The full definition of protection is a matter for table discussion and government to government negotiation.
7. For those areas identified as First Nation Lead Areas on the map attached as Appendix “A”, and as further described in the Protection Area Summary Matrix attached as Appendix “B”, CFCI and RSP recommend that the determination of whether these areas receive protection status or be available for resource development activity should be made by First Nations through government to government negotiations.

## **EBM FRAMEWORK**

8. CFCI and RSP agree with the EBM Framework and recommend that it be adopted.

## **EBM HANDBOOK**

9. CFCI and RSP acknowledge that the Handbook and HPG will be complete once peer review is finished.
10. CFCI and RSP agree that, when finished, the handbook is intended to evolve/change over time based on information arising through adaptive management (both passive and active)<sup>1</sup>.
11. CFCI and RSP agree that in completing the handbook, the handbook team should ensure that all key components of the HPG should be incorporated into the handbook.
12. CFCI and RSP agree that any amendments to the handbook as a result of information arising through adaptive management are to be made on the basis of government-to-government decisions informed by recommendations from the EBM Council<sup>2</sup>.
13. Subject to the understandings, acknowledgements, confirmations, and other agreements contained herein, CFCI and RSP agree the EBM Handbook, which includes key elements of the HPG<sup>3</sup>, be adopted in its entirety for implementation as described below.
14. CFCI and RSP agree that “adoption of the handbook” means the following:
  - a) The handbook will be used to guide the development of EBM plans, FDPs and FSPs in the region;
  - b) Certain elements of the handbook will be established as legal objectives by the provincial government based on recommendation from the EBM Council – other than such legal objectives the Handbook is intended to be a guide and not prescriptive;
  - c) EBM as described in the handbook will be implemented under the guidance of the EBM Council;
  - d) The Handbook will be used to inform planners and decision makers on the key concepts and basic components and planning and management strategies required for the development of EBM plans;
  - e) Acknowledgement and support of the consensus agreements provided by the table regarding the Handbook

---

<sup>1</sup> It is understood that information other than CIT products can be considered/incorporated through adaptive management (both passive and active). It is also understood that the handbook may be further developed to more fully apply to the activities of sectors other than forestry.

<sup>2</sup> Wherever a reference is made to decisions or recommendations from the EBM Council, these are understood to be based on recommendations from by the Adaptive Management Body where appropriate.

<sup>3</sup> The Hydoriparian Planning Guide is adopted as general guidance.

## **THRESHOLDS AND MANAGEMENT TARGETS**

15. CFCI and RSP agree that peer review of the Scientific Basis of Ecosystem Based Management, the document that supports the ecological thresholds (i.e. the compendium), is not yet complete.
16. CFCI and RSP agree that, upon completion of this peer review, the various thresholds and management targets in the Handbook represent an ecological precautionary interpretation of the best independent information currently available regarding levels of risk associated with different indicators relative to different levels of forest development.
17. CFCI and RSP agree that thresholds and management targets in the Handbook are intended to evolve/change over time based on information arising through adaptive management (both passive and active).
18. CFCI and RSP agree that any amendments to thresholds and management targets in the Handbook based on information arising through adaptive management are to be made on the basis of government-to-government decisions informed by recommendations from the EBM Council (as per Schedule "C").
19. CFCI and RSP agree to adopt the thresholds and management targets (as may be changed over time through the refinement process referred to below or through adaptive management) as the long term ecological goals that will guide planning.

## **THRESHOLD REFINEMENT**

CFCI and RSP agree that a more refined approach to establishing representational thresholds at the sub-regional/territorial level needs to be developed based on (i) grouping ecosystems according to specified ecological criteria (e.g. the habitat value of individual ecosystems, connectivity value of the ecosystems, sensitivity of ecosystem function to reductions in old seral stage conditions, the portion of ecosystem reserved in protected areas, relative frequency/rarity of ecosystems, and the potential ecological impacts of excess levels of mid and early seral habitats) (ii) developing group specific risk curves and thresholds (iii) establishing a range of precautionary targets for each ecosystem grouping based on the ecological criteria as well as the estimated reliability of data (where surrogates are used) and (iv) specifying spatial deployment strategies.

20. CFCI and RSP agree that this more refined approach to developing representational thresholds and precautionary targets be developed as follows:
  - a) Work on this is to be commenced immediately under the auspices of CFCI/RSP and/or a committee consisting of the same parties as the CIT management committee<sup>4</sup> with seed funding to be provided by parties participating on this committee;
  - b) Once the EBM Council is established, this work, if not complete, is to take place under the direction/management of the EBM Council;
  - c) This work is to be undertaken by the Handbook Team augmented by a limited number of additional experts; and
  - d) CFCI and RSP will provide constructive and collaborative input into this process.

---

<sup>4</sup> CFCI and RSP are open to either approach – the issue is what works best for government and First Nations.

## OPERATIONAL TARGETS

21. CFCI and RSP agree that the goal of EBM is to concurrently achieve high degrees of ecological integrity and high degrees of human well-being.
22. CFCI and RSP agree that some of the thresholds and management targets can be immediately achieved with limited/no adverse impact on human well being.
23. CFCI and RSP similarly agree that there are circumstances where achieving a particular human well being requirement would result in an unacceptable level of risk/impact to ecological integrity.
24. CFCI and RSP also agree that there may be some thresholds and management targets that cannot be achieved in the short, medium and/or long term without an unacceptable level of risk/impact to human well being. In these circumstances, a transition period may be appropriate to achieve human well-being.
25. CFCI and RSP agree that where a threshold or management target represents an unacceptable level of risk/impact on human well being, the mechanisms for addressing this are the troubleshooting provisions of the handbook and the Turning Point/KDC/MTTC Flexibility Principle as adopted by the CCLCRMP Completion Table.
26. Based on the foregoing, CFCI and RSP agree that operational targets shall be periodically established by forest operators as follows:
  - a) Any operational target that is consistent with thresholds or management targets in the EBMH, can be implemented without referral to the EBM Council
  - b) Wherever possible, operational targets need to be established in a manner that concurrently achieve low degrees of ecological risk and high degrees of human well being;
  - c) Where this is not possible immediately, the operational target needs to be established on the basis of a social choice<sup>5</sup> that is (i) informed by the thresholds and management targets (ii) informed by the impact on human well being (iii) guided by the trouble shooting provisions of the Handbook (iv) guided by the Turning Point/KDC/MTTC Flexibility Principle as adopted by the Central Coast LRMP Completion Table and (v) informed by the ecological risk;
  - d) Operational targets that differ from thresholds or management targets in the EBMH are to be referred to the EBM Council (or such other body delegated this responsibility through government to government discussions) for approval based on the foregoing criteria;
  - e) Operational targets that differ from thresholds or management targets in the EBMH need to be periodically reviewed by the EBM Council based on (i) information arising through adaptive management (both passive and active) and (ii) advice from the Adaptive Management Body where appropriate.
27. CFCI and RSP recognize that the EBMH handbook trouble-shooting provisions are intended to address the needs of vulnerable human systems that cannot be addressed without a trade-off and that in many situations business interests will have an important part to play in improving human well being.

---

<sup>5</sup> A social choice is understood to be a choice/decision that is informed by a transparent consideration of both ecological risk and risk to human well being.

## EBM IMPLEMENTATION AND OPERATIONAL TRANSITION<sup>6</sup>

28. CFCI and RSP agree that the following transitional management targets should apply for one year while the EBM Council is established:

- a) **Representation** - Classify the site series surrogates into five groupings (rare, uncommon, modal, common, and very common) and establish a minimum representation target at the landscape level of:
  - i) 70 % of the natural occurrence of old seral for any site series surrogate that falls within the modal, uncommon or rare grouping; and,
  - ii) 30% of the natural occurrence of old seral for any site series surrogate that falls within the common or very common grouping.
- b) This approach to representation involves establishing approximately 35,000 Ha of reserves in these site series groupings to achieve what is outlined in the following table:

### Current representation

Group	<30% RONV	30% to 70% RONV	>70% RONV	Total Forest
very common	176289	491511	1005617	1673417
common	58209	16643	49447	124298
modal	15636	10983	7932	34551
uncommon	4656	1540	2408	8603
rare	617	427	256	1300
Grand Total	255407	521103	1065659	1842169
	14%	28%	58%	

### Representation after

Group	<30% RONV	30% to 70% RONV	>70% RONV	Total Forest
very common		665367	1008049	1673416
common		75656	48641	124298
modal			34551	34551
uncommon			8603	8603
rare			1300	1300
Grand Total		741023	1101144	1842168
	0%	40%	60%	

---

<sup>6</sup> The parties will recommend that the current table decisions on implementation, transition, adaptive management and the EBM Council be amended to make them consistent with the document attached as Schedule "C".

- c) As landscape level planning proceeds reserves required to achieve these representation targets will be deployed in a manner that enhances conservation of ecological values including but not limited to:
- i) Representation of ecosystems that are rare in the landscape
  - ii) High value wildlife habitat including wildlife trees
  - iii) High value fish habitat
  - iv) Riparian ecosystems
  - v) Karst features
  - vi) Connectivity for focal, blue and red wildlife species
  - vii) Unstable slopes
  - viii) OGMAs
  - ix) and other ecological values
- d) In some cases achieving these representation targets will require recruitment of young forest where old does not exist. These recruitment areas will be identified in reserves in keeping with the spatial deployment criteria outlined above.

**ECA** – (No consensus achieved)

**Red-listed** - Reserve 100% of CDC red listed. Variance from this target to be guided by the EBM Handbook trouble shooting criteria to be approved by the Statutory Decision Maker.

**Blue listed** - (No consensus achieved)

**Stand Level Retention** – 15% minimum retention within cutblocks.

**Mid-seral cap at the landscape and watershed scale** - Maintain <50% of each ecosystem type in mid seral. In developed landscapes and watersheds with >50% mid seral in the harvesting landbase, harvest or reserve managed stands to prevent excessive mid seral representation.

**Estuaries(watershed scale)** - Maintain >90% of the natural riparian forest on estuaries.

**Swamps and Gullies** - Maintain >50% of the natural riparian forest next to fans, forested swamps and small steep streams/gullies with unique microclimate.

High Value Fish Habitat - Reserve all wetlands, active floodplains, active fluvial units and high value fish habitat including buffer<sup>7</sup>. Definition of HVFH is clarified by the following examples:

- e) Where fish congregate e.g. where clear water streams enter murky rivers and holding pools;
  - f) Critical spawning habitat: e.g. larger spawning beds and spawning beds that support threatened or endangered runs;
  - g) Critical rearing: e.g. small streams that do not freeze over and side channels used for rearing
- (a) This definition does not necessarily include all fish habitat.

---

<sup>7</sup> Hydoriparian buffers are equal to 1.5 times the height of the dominant trees.

(b) (Note: access provisions for crossings as per FPC riparian reserves)

29. These management targets will be implemented on a voluntary basis by the CFCI companies starting March 31<sup>st</sup>.
30. CFCI and RSP agree to revisit these management targets within 1 year if the EBM Council has not revised them.
31. CFCI and RSP agree to work towards developing an EBM Handbook transitional strategy by March 31<sup>st</sup> 2004 including:
  - a) Refining the sub regional/territorial representation thresholds as per sections 20 and 21;
  - b) Developing an operational implementation strategy as per Schedule "C";
  - c) Clarifying the EBM Handbook troubleshooting process.
32. CFCI and RSP agree that EBM implementation and transition considerations should be addressed in the manner outlined in Schedule "C".
33. CFCI and RSP agree that the EBM Council should be structured and governed in the manner described outlined in Schedule "D".

## Schedule “C” AIP

### EBM Implementation and Transition Considerations

#### 1. Introduction

Ecosystem based management contemplates significant change to planning and practices associated with forest development. It relies on a high degree of cooperation among managers and proponents, ongoing learning and the methodical application of knowledge, data and science. In essence, EBM is a process that is implemented in stages as capacity and knowledge increases. The intent of EBM is to achieve healthy, fully functioning ecosystems and human communities.

---

#### 2. Operational Transition

Operational transition to EBM is part of the broader implementation strategy. The focus is making the transition from the current planning regime to EBM planning.

Fundamental principles of operational transition include:

- Maximize conservation of the most sensitive ecological elements as soon as possible while simultaneously minimizing costs and disruptions to existing planning;
- Grandfather existing CPs and FDPs with incorporation of agreed key EBM elements in effect at the time of operations as per the phase in schedule developed as a result of the January workshop;
- As a priority establish milestones starting with immediately visible actions that demonstrate commitment to implementation;
- Establish future benchmarks as reference points to monitor progress;
- Operational transition will be phased in over 5 years;
- Establish operational pilots in every tenure to facilitate training in the field and further develop EBM application methods;
- Use the ecosystem spatial analysis to prioritize watersheds/landscapes for EBM planning;

A detailed EBM implementation strategy based on these principles, addressing the content of Schedule “D”, will be developed in a collaborative EMB Implementation Workshop in January of 2004.



---

### **3. Data Requirements**

The implementation of EBM relies heavily on the availability of data. It is generally agreed that data gaps exist, including data relating to ecological, social, economic and cultural factors. The strategy and timing of outstanding data development and analysis need to be addressed in the EBM Implementation Workshop. Obvious steps in data development include:

- Identify data gaps (e.g., TEM, socioeconomic) and analytical requirements;
  - Develop and initiate workplan, budget acquisition and timeline to close data gaps;
  - Prioritize which data gaps get attention and action.
- 

### **4. Capacity Building and Training**

Given the change from current planning and practice contemplated by EBM, capacity building is a priority for implementation.

General proposals that require further development:

- Beginning immediately, develop and implement an EBM training program for managers, planners and workers (including field training sessions, video training, computer based training model with self test, posters, etc.);
- Link training program to operational pilots (landscape/watershed) as a modular means of implementing operational components of the EBM Handbook.

### **5. Workforce adjustment**

The principles and goals of EBM require equity. Where the implementation of EBM leads to a reduction in the numbers of people employed in forestry, logging and silviculture, a mechanism is required to ensure workers are treated equitably. This is primarily the responsibility of government and licensees and institutional mechanisms like the *Coast Sustainability Trust*.

## 6. Costs Associated with implementing EBM

Implementing EBM has cost implications for government and the private sector. The failure to quantify and understand cost implications in a precise and transparent fashion could prove to be a significant impediment to implementing EBM. Implementing EBM successfully requires that enterprises that practice EBM realize a profit if they are to be successful, and that institutions (e.g., government) supporting implementation of EBM enjoy a measure of fiscal accountability. Among other things, the implementation process needs to address:

- Government revenue;
- Amortizing infrastructure (e.g., roads, bridges, logging camps);
- Existing deployment of capital (e.g., machinery, camps, infrastructure, human resources);
- Opportunity costs;
- Stumpage allowance.

## 7. Investment

The implementation of EBM contemplates new investment to achieve the desired equilibrium between conservation and development. Recognizing that investment seeks a return, the opportunities for new and innovative investment need to be actively explored. To date, exploration of the potential of new investment to carry the cost of implementing EBM has been explored on a limited basis.

The implementation process needs to establish criteria for EBM investment and pursue sources including:

- CIII
- Forest Industry
- Socially responsible investment
- Governments and First Nations

Criteria include:

- Risk abatement
- Marketing
- Potential for return on investment

Recent proposals from the Forest Sector for Investment include:

- developing an international reputation for environmental leadership
- doubling the amount of volume going into value-added processing in BC over the next ten years
- branding coastal forest products
- a range of improved forest practices including eco-system based management
- practicing innovative eco-sensitive forestry

## ECOLOGICAL ELEMENTS

The following ecological elements are targets and thresholds from the EBM Handbook. The Workshop referred to in 2 above will review these elements and set milestones for EBM operational transition.

### **At all scales, reserve:**

- Red-listed and rare ecosystems;
- Riparian areas adjacent to high value fish habitat

### **Stand level targets:**

- min. 15% stand-level retention
- limits on detrimental soil disturbance and permanent access

### **Watershed level targets:**

#### **➤ Riparian reserves:**

- Karst and estuaries, floodplains, fans, forested swamps, steep streams with unique microclimates, active floodplains, active fluvial units
- other hydro-riparian areas
- stream buffers in transport and deposition zones

#### **➤ Other watershed reserves/requirements:**

- Min. old rep. at watershed, avg. to landscape target
- Blue-listed ecosystems
- Areas with Class V slope stability
- Reserve design to protect critical habitat, maintain connectivity, protect ecosystems rare at landscape level
- Reduce excessive mid-seral representation

### **Landscape level targets:**

- Min. old rep. at landscape, avg. to sub-regional target
- Reduce excessive mid-seral representation
- Blue-listed ecosystems
- Reserve design to protect critical habitat, maintain connectivity for red/blue listed and focal wildlife species, protect ecosystems rare at landscape level

***TERRITORY/ SUB REGION TARGETS:***

➤ **Riparian targets:**

- Karst and estuaries, floodplains, fans, forested swamps, and steep streams/gullies with unique microclimates
- Other hydroriparian ecosystems

➤ **Other territory/ sub region targets:**

- Natural old by ecosystem type
- Low risk targets to watersheds Class IV/V terrain

## Schedule “D”

### Institutional Arrangements for the EBM Council and the EBM Science Team

#### Mandate

The EBM Council is the steward of EBM as it is applied in the Central Coast, North Coast and Haida Gwaii/QCI region of the coast of BC. The EBM Council oversees the ongoing development and implementation of EBM in a transparent and accountable manner.

The EBM Science Team is a technically oriented body required to develop, collect and synthesize scientifically and technically rigorous information regarding EBM implementation and adaptive management. It makes recommendations to inform the decisions of the EBM Council.

The decisions and recommendations of the EBM Council do not prejudice the rights, title or legal powers of the First Nations' or provincial governments. The decisions of the EBM Council do not fetter the provincial or First Nations governments.

The EBM Council will recognize the autonomy of each First Nation.

The EBM Council will be set up under an agreement of the First Nations of the region and the province.

Recognizing that the intent is to establish the EBM Council and EBM Science Team as permanent bodies, secure funding for an initial period of 5 years is required to ensure effective EBM implementation. After 3 years, the EBM Council will be reviewed to identify means of enhancing its effectiveness.

#### EBM Council MEMBERSHIP

The EBM Council will be made up of 7 members:

- a. Three from First Nations, of whom one will be co-chair
- One representing the province, who will also be co-chair
- One representing a conservation perspective

One representing a business perspective  
One representing a community perspective

Representatives on the council, other than those of the province and the First Nations, will be appointed from a list of nominees made on the basis of knowledge of and a commitment to EBM.

### **EBM COUNCIL Roles**

The roles of the EBM Council are to:

- a) Establish an EBM Science Team that will inform the decision making of the Council.
- b) Make decisions regarding the refinement, implementation and practice of EBM to maintain ecological integrity and achieve high levels of human wellbeing.
- c) Receive and act upon recommendations and reports from the EBM Science Team.
- d) Assess trade-off proposals in accordance with the EBM Handbook (Section 7.5) and the “Flexibility Management Policy Related to Ecosystem-Based Management” Coastal First Nations – Turning Point Initiative and Kwakiutl District Council/Musgamagw Tsawataineuk Tribal Council / Tlowitsis Nation.
- e) Manage information, including warehousing of and access to databases, and gather and distribute new information on EBM.
- f) Set, based on the best available science, benchmarks and thresholds for human well-being and ecological integrity.
- g) Recommend to the governments management targets and operational targets.
- h) Ensure the effectiveness of monitoring and implementation programs.
- i) Establish priorities and requirements for adaptive management programs/initiatives and ensure their credibility/effective implementation.
- j) Maintain transparency through public reporting and other means with respect to:
  - o decisions of the Council;
  - o progress on EBM implementation and practice;
  - o recommendations of the EBM Science Team;
  - o improvements in knowledge; and,
  - o other relevant matters.

- k) Prepare annual reports on achievement of EBM goals

### **Procedures Including Decision Making and Dispute Resolution**

Recognizing that EBM is a collaborative process the Council should strive for unanimity in decision-making. When unanimity is not possible, decisions of the Council will require unanimity less one vote.

In the event that one of the governments is in disagreement with a decision, they have the option of invoking a government-to-government dispute resolution procedure.

Council meetings are open to the public.

## **EBM Science Team**

### **Membership**

The EBM Science Team is an independent body of practitioners, scientists and other specialists appointed by and reporting to the EBM Council. The combined expertise of the EBM Science Team will address ecological integrity (e.g., forest ecology, terrain stability, hydrology, riparian ecosystems, conservation biology, traditional ecological knowledge), human well-being (e.g., socio-economics, sociology, anthropology) and the design and application of adaptive management programs.<sup>8</sup>

### **Mandate**

The mandate of the EBM Science Team is to provide transparent, independent and rigorous scientific and technical recommendations and advice to guide the decision-making of the EBM Council. EBM Science Team products are available to interested parties.

### **Roles:**

---

<sup>8</sup> Its membership should be selected with consideration for the following criteria:

- a) Knowledge and experience relevant to the Coast;
- b) An academic degree; equivalent professional qualification; and/or demonstrated practical experience;
- c) Contribution to the published literature in their field of specialty and/or publication of competent technical reports based on field work and assessments;
- d) Recognition by their peers and/or community as an authority in their field.



The roles of the EBM Science Team include:

- Develop technical directives for adaptive management and recommend research priorities for adaptive management.
- Review and approve both Active and Passive Adaptive Management Plans.
- Assist in the development of best management practices and their assessment in ecological and economic criteria.
- Monitor key indicators of EBM performance.
- Gather new scientific information relevant to EBM.
- Improve understanding of the interaction between human and ecological wellbeing.
- Analyze and summarize results of adaptive management, monitoring, and new scientific information and develop reports and recommendations for consideration by the EBM Council.
- Provide analysis and advice to the EBM Council with respect to refinements to and elaborations of EBM.

### **Initial Focus of the EBM Science team**

The initial focus of the EBM Science Team should be on:

- a) Refining the risk curves, thresholds and management targets in the EBM Handbook.
- b) Developing and refining benchmarks.
- c) Improving the scientific basis for the spatial distribution of retention and reserves.

## **Approach to Adaptive Management**

Adaptive management, as overseen by the EBM Council and the EBM Science Team, is understood according to the parameters set out in this section.

Adaptive management, both passive and active:

- a) is guided by the technical direction on adaptive management as set out by the EBM Science Team;
- b) addresses the adaptive management criteria and research priorities of the EBM council, though individual operators may also define additional research priorities to be considered through adaptive management;
- c) requires long-term commitment and adequate resources.

Adaptive management plans and results are submitted to the EBM Council.

### **Passive Adaptive Management**

Key features of Passive Adaptive Management include:

- a) It is based on explicit objectives;

- b) It incorporates a monitoring component;
- c) It monitors the results of alternative practices with regard to achieving specific outcomes and objectives.

### **Active Adaptive Management**

Key features of Active Adaptive Management include:

- a) It is based on explicit hypotheses;
- b) It is designed as an experiment;
- c) The methodology is peer reviewed before implementation;
- d) It produces scientific results that are published;
- e) It typically undertaken in a collaborative manner with proponents, governments, other operators, interested parties, research institutions and universities.

## Appendix 5 – Management Direction for Protection Areas

---

## 1. Ahnuhati Complex Protection Area

Size: 50,660 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Ahnuhati Complex PA is to protect a largely intact grizzly bear – salmon and old growth ecosystem and captures representative watersheds in the Northern Pacific Ranges. The Ahnuhati Complex contributes to the Ahnuhati Core Grizzly Bear Management area.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

Provides opportunities for remote backcountry commercial tourism and recreation

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Order-in-Council Reserve covers small Islands and Islets - Miscellaneous Land Use – File 0186760
- Guide outfitter

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

Guide outfitting, angling guiding, sports fishing, wildlife viewing, kayaking, helicopter viewing.

**Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

### **Management Issues**

*(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

Known Management Issues	Response
First Nations Interests (Rights and Title)	Address through high level government to government discussions
Designation of Grizzly Bear Management Area and conflict with existing uses.	No grizzly bear hunting is permitted in the Grizzly Bear Management Area. WLAP to lead process to resolve management and existing uses.
Sources of Information:	CCGAT, Grizzly Bear Conservation Strategy
Prioritization of Planning:	High.

## **Summary of Values**

*(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

### **1. Conservation**

#### Representation

- ecosection ☒ NPR
- biogeoclimatic subzone ☒  
ATp, CWH vm1, vm2, MHmm1
- ☒ Ahta estuary, exceptional  
Grizzly/Salmon/Old Growth ecosystem on BC south coast.

#### Rare/Endangered Species

- ☒ marbled murrelet

### **2. Recreation**

#### Representation

- backcountry ☒ fishing, hiking, wildlife-viewing,  
kayaking, recreational boating,  
anchorage
- destination ☒ boating and fishing
- travel corridor ☐
- local recreation ☒ pleasure craft travel route

### **3. Cultural Heritage**

#### Representation

☐

#### Special Feature

☐

## **2. Ape Lake Protection Area**

Size: 20,963 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Ape Lake PA is to provide public and commercial backcountry recreation opportunities.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The PA also protects high elevation alpine ecosystems and helps fill gaps in the North Pacific Ranges ecosection. Ape Lake PA is a staging area for mountaineering activities occurring in the surrounding alpine.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Guide Outfitter Tenure
- Heli Ski Tenure

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

Camping, hunting, trapping, hiking, heli-skiing, mountaineering, snow machine, snow boarding and trick skiing, staging area for mountaineering activities, recreational gold panning/ rock hounding, all terrain vehicles.

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Helicopter skiing, helicopter hiking
- Alpine hiking, mountaineering, access to glaciers, hut to hut hiking
- Collaborative management with community of Bella Coola
- Scientific/Research Opportunities - geological mapping
- Wildlife/alpine meadow viewing, fishing, recreational gold panning / rock hounding
- Lodge and resort development
- Small hut to hut development
- Snow board camp training area
- Further development of trail network
- Waterfall destination area
- Botanical non timber products

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Vegetation health management</b>	Based on the values in the PA and the adjacent values, develop a vegetation health management plan (including fire, insect and disease management).  Snow compaction due to winter recreation should be monitored and acceptable compaction levels should be determined-  Further summer all terrain recreational vehicles to be restricted in wetland, bog areas due to sensitive plant communities.
<b>Lodge and resort development</b>	Siting of lodge/resort to be sensitive to other public and commercial backcountry recreation opportunities. Address through detailed planning.
<b>Private lot at end of Ape Lake (lot 95)</b>	Access to lot 95 is unimpeded.
<b>Existing FS recreation site and infrastructure (boardwalk)</b>	Existing infrastructure to be maintained. Ensure toilet facilities, garbage issues are addressed plus ongoing maintenance fund to be determined.
<b>Rotary and fixed wing air access for skiing/hiking/hut to hut</b>	Allowed, as long as wildlife issues addressed.
<b>Roads</b>	Existing road to area should be maintained. New roads are permitted.  All terrain vehicles will be prohibited from access to wetlands and alpine areas- but will be allowed access to existing roaded areas.  Develop maintenance plan including access to funding.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	Local knowledge.
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Medium to Low priority for tourism/recreation plan.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒

NPR  
ATc, CWHws2, MHmm2

Special Feature

- ☒ high elevation wetland/shallow lakes/bog above Odegaard Falls in Hammer Creek, Jökulhlaups (floodburst activity that occurs when a glacier becomes a dam) - floodburst activity is expected to be an ongoing phenomena.

Species of interest ☐

Rare/Endangered Species ☐

**2. Recreation**

Representation

- Backcountry ☒
- Destination ☒

road accessed alpine area  
destination potential and staging area to surrounding alpine area

Travel corridor ☐

Local recreation ☒

former FS rec site; Nusatsum Noeick FS road

**3. Cultural Heritage**

Representation ☐

Special Feature ☐



### **3. Clayton Falls Protection Area**

Size: 5,040 hectares

#### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

To include an example of the CWHvm3 biogeoclimatic subzone variant. Yellow cedar in this variant is near the limit of its eastward distribution .

The Clayton Falls PA provides recreation and commercial tourism opportunities that are compatible with the yellow cedar communities, which only occur on a small part of the Protection Area. Mechanized and non-mechanized winter activities and low impact summer opportunities are all considered acceptable in this area.

#### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

The PA will provide a genetic bank and opportunities to research and increase knowledge about yellow cedar communities.

#### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Map reserve for roadway – File 5401443
- Map reserve for Miscellaneous Land Use – File 5403036
- Guide Outfitter Tenure
- Heli Ski Tenure

#### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Hiking, cross-country skiing, swimming, fishing, canoeing
- Snowmobiling
- Nature appreciation for high alpine plant communities, peat bogs, wet lands, birds, mammals, boardwalks, picnic area
- Local destination viewscape area with high scenic values
- Lodge and resort development

#### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Helicopter skiing and snowmobiling
- Alpine hiking
- Collaborative management with community of Bella Coola
- Swimming, canoeing and other lake related activities
- Hut to hut for winter and summer recreationists
- Recreational gold panning and rock hounding
- Potential for private recreational cabin development within the lakes area
- Commercial tours

- Ski lift development
- Fisheries enhancement of lakes

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Vegetation health management</b>	Based on the values in the PA and the adjacent values, develop a vegetation health management plan (including fire, insect and disease management).  Snow compaction due to winter recreation should be monitored and acceptable compaction levels should be determined.  Further summer all terrain vehicles to be restricted in wetland, bog areas due to sensitive plant communities.
<b>Private cabin, lodge and resort development</b>	Siting of facilities to be sensitive to other public and commercial backcountry recreation opportunities. Address through detailed planning.
<b>Existing Forest Service infrastructure at Blue Jay lake - maintenance and liability</b>	Recommend infrastructure be maintained. Ensure toilet facilities, garbage issues are addressed plus ongoing maintenance fund.
<b>Potential safety concerns between hunting and recreation activities</b>	If use levels increase, revisit appropriate uses.
<b>Helicopter skiing, hiking, mountaineering</b>	Allowed, as long as conflicts with public snowmobiling and wildlife addressed.
<b>Roads</b>	Recommend that existing road be maintained, and new roads be permitted as long as they do not impact yellow cedar community. Develop maintenance plan including access to funding.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT Report. Local knowledge.
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	High priority for more detailed planning with respect to tourism/recreation.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ Northern Pacific Ranges
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ AT unp, CWHvm3, MH mm1, MHmm2

Special Feature

- ☒ Encompasses - CWHvm3 (old yellow cedar temperate rainforest); stand represents easternmost extent of yellow cedar Ecosystem with old Cypress

Species of special interest

- ☒ Yellow cedar community

Rare/Endangered Species

- ☒

**2. Recreation**

Representation

- Backcountry ☒ Accessible alpine area
- Destination ☒
- Travel corridor ☐
- Local recreation ☒ Former FS recreation site

**3. Cultural Heritage**

Representation

- ☐

Special Feature

- ☐

#### **4. Cape Caution Protection Area**

Size: 10, 574 hectares

**Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Cape Caution PA is to protect recreational opportunities and special features such as beaches, tidal rapids and rock formations characteristic of the west coast.

**Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

The PA captures the Hecate Lowland ecosection and priority biogeoclimatic variants characteristic of the coastal bog forests.

**Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Order-in-Council Reserve – Miscellaneous Land Use – File 0186760 (reserves all islands and Islets)
- Application for Licence of Occupation for Guided Saltwater Recreation - File 1409266
- Application for Licence of Occupation for Guided Nature Viewing – File 1409066
- Map reserve for Industrial Purposes – File 1402999
- Notation of Interest for Miscellaneous Land Use – Files 1407803, 1407817
- Licence of Occupation for Commercial Purposes – File 1407132, 5404032
- Guide Outfitter Tenures

**Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Pleasure boating, kayaking, diving / dive camp, safe anchorage at Takush Harbour, commercial recreation/ tourism
- Scientific research

**Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Recreation and tourism
- Wildlife viewing
- Filming on location

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Carrying capacity: limited camping sites.</b>	Recommend that issues be addressed in future detailed planning.
<b>Sources of Information:</b>	CCGAT, Outdoor Recreation Council map
<b>Prioritization of Planning:</b>	Moderate to Low.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

### 1. Conservation

Representation

- ecosection Strait ☒ Hecate Lowland, Queen Charlotte
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWH vh1

Special Feature ☒ Trembling Rock, Nakwakto rapids, beaches

Species of interest ☐

Rare/Endangered Species ☒ Trumpeter swan (over wintering)

### 2. Recreation

Representation

- Backcountry ☒ Remote shoreline
- Destination ☒ Beaches, rapids, scuba diving site, camping sites
- Travel corridor ☒ Associated with Inside Passage
- Local recreation ☐

### 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation ☐

Special Feature ☐

## **5. Broughton Extension Protection Area**

Size: 4,197 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Broughton PA is to protect an outstanding marine destination for kayakers and pleasure boaters.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

The PA covers a portion of the Outer Fjordland ecosection and priority biogeoclimatic variants characteristic of coastal forests.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Commercial Lease– File 1402481
- Order-in-Council Reserve – Miscellaneous Land Use – File 0186760
- Right-of-Ways for a Sewer/Effluent Line for Plan 42266 (22TU1239) – Files 1402567, 1402568
- Licences of Occupation for Commercial purposes – File 1404249, 1405607, 1404678, 1405627, 1405400
- License of Occupation for Aquaculture Purposes – File 1404381
- Applications for Licences of Occupation for Aquaculture purposes – File 1404380, 1404681, 1403313, 1405020
- Applications for Licences of Occupation for Commercial purposes – File 1405292, 1405293

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Marine wildlife viewing, kayaking, pleasure boating, sport fishing
- Guide outfitting
- First Nations cultural tourism
- Existing commercial activities

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Recreation and tourism

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Intensity of tourism development</b>	Maintain a high degree of naturalness in the PA. Restriction on permanent facilities. Issue to be addressed in future detailed planning.
<b>Carrying-capacity: conflict between public kayakers and commercial use, potable water, camping sites</b>	Recommend that issues be addressed in future detailed planning.
<b>Upland infrastructure for fish farms</b>	No new infrastructure allowed. Minimize visual and auditory impacts of existing fish farm.
<b>Integration with marine component</b>	Tie to North Island Straits Integrated Coastal Plan.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT, local knowledge
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	High

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation		
• ecosection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Outer Fjordland, Queen Charlotte Strait
• biogeoclimatic subzone/variant	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CWH vm1
Special Feature	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Rhinoceros Auklets
Species of special interest	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Rare/Endangered species	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Marbled Murrelet

**2. Recreation**

Representation	
Backcountry	<input type="checkbox"/>

Destination	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Pleasure crafts, kayaks, mother ships
Travel corridor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Associated with Inside Passage, Robson Bight and Johnstone Straits
Local recreation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Camping, sheltered waters & anchorages, proximity to communities, sport fishing
<b>3. Cultural Heritage</b>		
Representation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Settlement patterns
Special Feature	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Ship wreck



## 6. Smokehouse Protection Area

Size: 37, 785 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Smokehouse Protection Area is to protect a representative example of the North Pacific Ranges (NPR) ecosection. Smokehouse PA captures a range of ecosystems from estuary to alpine tundra and protects Long Lake. The area captures important Grizzly Bear/ Sockeye Salmon interactions and habitat.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Provides opportunities for remote backcountry commercial tourism.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Map Reserve for Fish and Wildlife Management – File 0312383
- Guide Outfitter Tenures

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Guide outfitting
- Monitoring of the Salmon Runs.

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Commercial backcountry tourism and public recreation
- Fly-in fresh water sports fishing
- Botanical non timber products

### **Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Monitoring of the Salmon Runs.</b>	Should liaise with DFO regarding monitoring activities and facilities.
<b>Potential safety concerns between hunting and recreation activities.</b>	If use levels increase, revisit appropriate uses.

<b>Priority for management planning</b>	Low to nil.
<b>Sources of Information:</b>	CCGAT Report

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

### 1. Conservation

Representation

- ecosection ☒ NPR
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant MHmm1 ☒ CWH vm1 and CWH vm2, ATp

Special Feature

- ☒ High grizzly bear values due to productive diversity of bear habitats; high spring and fall grizzly bear use; extensive bear salmon fishing
- Large run of Sockeye salmon is an important food source for grizzly bears

Chinook salmon spawn in Long Lake, primarily at the "narrows"; Dolly Varden present

Species of special interest

- ☐ Grizzly Bear /Sockeye interaction

Rare/Endangered Species

- ☒ Grizzly Bears, marbled murrelets

### 2. Recreation

Representation

- Backcountry ☒
- Destination ☐
- Travel corridor ☐
- Local recreation ☐

### 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation

- ☐

Special Feature

- ☐

## **7. Upper Klinaklini Protection Area**

Size: 39, 088 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Upper Klinaklini Protection Area is to include a significant geomorphological trench system and an ecologically unique transmontaine valley, which provides low elevation connectivity between moist coastal ecosystems and dry interior ecosystem. Provides connection between Tweedsmuir Park and Upper Klinaklini Goal two. Major flyway for migratory birds.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Backcountry recreation and eco-tourism activities.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Application for Licence of Occupation for Hunting/Fishing Camp – File 5404765
- Lease for Commercial Purposes – File 0266621
- Map Reserve for Miscellaneous Land Use – File 0228180
- Licence of Occupation for Commercial Recreation – File 5406290
- Guide Outfitter Tenures
- Classified waters (commercial white water river rafting)

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Guide outfitting, river rafting, angling, wildlife viewing, staging area for mountaineering in adjacent areas, fishing and hunting

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Eco-tourism/recreation
- Rock hounding and recreational gold panning
- Hut to hut touring
- Commercial harvesting of botanical non-timber forest products
- Mineral exploration and development as per Order-In-Council specifications
- Cultural tourism

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Air access</b>	Acceptable.
<b>Intensity of tourism development</b>	limit impact of tourism infrastructure and activities on the visual resource values in the PA. Maintain a high degree of naturalness in the PA. Issue to be addressed in future detailed planning.
<b>Sensitivities about ecological values and mineral exploration and development</b>	This will be dealt with on a site-specific basis through existing legislation and regulation.
<b>Priority for planning</b>	Low, contingent on access development.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	Technical Planning Team, local knowledge.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant



N. Pacific Ranges, West Chilcotin Ranges



CWHds2, CWHws2, others

Special Feature



Grizzly Bears

The entire drainage system represents the transition from coastal and interior ecosystems in B.C.

Species of interest



Travel corridor for Grizzly Bear between interior and coastal habitat-access to salmon runs

Rare/Endangered species



## 2. Recreation

Representation

Backcountry



Low levels of hiking, fishing, guide outfitting, white water rafting

Destination



Travel corridor



Local recreation



Fishing effort from Chilcotin

## 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation



Special Feature



First Nations grease trail to the interior

## 8. Catto Creek Protection Area

Size: 6,688 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Catto Creek PA is to include the geomorphological feature known as "the paint pots".

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Provides tourism opportunities associated with the geomorphological feature (paint pots) and alpine hiking.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Guide Outfitter Tenures

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- heli-hiking

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Tourism opportunities

### **Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Source of Information</b>	Local Knowledge
<b>Priority for planning</b>	Nil

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection

☒

North Pacific Ranges

- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant

☒

AT, CWH vm2, MHmm1

Special Feature

☒

Paint pots (geological feature)

Species of interest

☐

Rare/Endangered species

☐

**2. Recreation**

Representation

Backcountry

☒

Heli-hiking

Destination

☒

Viewing of the paint pots

Travel corridor

☐

Local recreation

☐

**3. Cultural Heritage**

Representation

☐

Special Feature

☐

## **9. Hotsprings/No Name Creek Protection Area**

Size: 22, 722 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Hotsprings/No Name Creek Protection Area is to protect a representative example of the North Pacific Ranges (NPR) ecosection. Hotspring/NNC PA captures an excellent example of the high, rugged mountains and large conifers normally found in this very underrepresented ecosection. The area around the hotsprings contains high biological diversity, and the PA protects this special feature.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Where appropriate, tourism and recreational opportunities such as hiking, cultural appreciation, and enjoyment of the hotsprings will be considered.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Guide Outfitter Tenure

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Use of hot springs by boaters and local residents

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Commercial backcountry recreation (hiking, mountaineering)
- Small lodge development associated with hot springs on periphery of the protection area
- Collaborative management with the Bella Coola community
- Healing / spiritual centre
- Hut to hut touring
- Hot springs/cultural tourism or other forms of collaborative management



**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Management of hot springs and associated archaeological values</b>	Address through detailed planning with the Bella Coola community.  (including issues such as garbage, camping, toilet facilities, temporary shelters and maintenance, intensity of use).
<b>Priority for management planning</b>	Moderate, focused on hot springs. Anchorage or moorage configuration needs to be addressed.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT Report

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ fills critical gap in N. Pacific Ranges
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ AT in NPR  
CWHms2 in NPR  
CWHvm3 in NPR  
CWHws2  
MHmm1  
MHmm2

Special Feature ☒ High biological diversity around hot springs

Species of interest ☒ Grizzly, goat habitat values

Rare/Endangered Species ☐

## 2. Recreation

Representation

Backcountry

☒

Some hiking/mountaineering opportunities

Destination

☐

Travel corridor

☐

Local recreation

☒

Hotsprings

## 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation

☐

Special Feature

☐

## 10. Pooley Island Protection Area

Size: 6, 592 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Pooley Island is to maintain wolf/deer interactions and habitat values. Maintains watershed integrity and Kermode bear habitat values.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Another role is to provide for commercial backcountry recreation and wildlife viewing opportunities.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Notations of Interest for Boat Havens – File 6405449, 6405450
- Guide Outfitter Tenure

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Commercial backcountry tours associated with boating activities in adjacent anchorages.

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Collaborative management with Kitasoo/Xaixais

### **Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Within Kitasoo Land Use Plan area</b>	Collaborative management with Kitasoo/XaisXais.
<b>Potential safety concerns between hunting and recreation activities</b>	If use levels increase, revisit appropriate uses.
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Low

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation		
• ecosection	<input type="checkbox"/>	Hecate Lowland and Kitimat Ranges
• biogeoclimatic subzone/variant	<input type="checkbox"/>	At. CWH
Special Feature	<input type="checkbox"/>	Estuaries at James Creek and Windy Bay and fisheries values
Species of interest	<input type="checkbox"/>	Kermode Bear (white phase of Black Bear)
Rare/Endangered species	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**2. Recreation**

Representation		
Backcountry	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Destination	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Travel corridor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Primary travel route to Fiordland Recreation Area
Local recreation	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**3. Cultural Heritage**

Representation	<input type="checkbox"/>	High FN values in Windy Bay, Griffin Pass and James Bay
		Traditional Uses (i.e. berry picking, use of medicines and wood for crafts and housing, hunting and fishing area)
Special Feature	<input type="checkbox"/>	

## 11. Price/Swindle Protection Area

Size: 14, 019 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Price/Swindle PA is to include representative forests, coastal features (muskegs, bogs, fens) and cultural heritage values characteristic of the Hecate Lowlands (HEL) ecosection, which is under-represented within the province's Protected Area system. The Price/Swindle PA fills major representation gaps (CWHvh2) within the HEL.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

Conservation of high fisheries values and provision of a number of recreation activities characteristic of the outside coast of BC, including kayaking, sheltered anchorages, and numerous pocket beaches.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Notation of Interest for Boat Haven – File 6405459

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Camping associated with kayaking, boating
- Wildlife viewing
- Commercial tourism related to kayaking and boating

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Opportunities for scenic viewing, and shoreline exploration
- Provides a convenient anchorage en route to Laredo Sound
- Collaborative management with Kitasoo/XaisXais community

### **Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.

<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Low. Refer to Kitasoo Land Use Plan
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT Report for Cann Inlet and Grant Anchorage.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

## 1. Conservation

### Representation

- ecosection
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant

### Special Feature

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	HEL
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CWHvh2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Salmonid streams - Kitasoo Hill is an example of recent volcanism Possible karst formation connecting to PRI and Aristazabal Island. Migration habitat values for waterfowl
<input type="checkbox"/>	Species of interest Kermode Bear (white phase of black bear)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rare/Endangered species

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

- Backcountry
- Destination
- Travel corridor

### Local recreation

<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Boat Haven, anchorage providing access to Laredo Sound, pocket beaches, kayak route
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	The inlet is very well protected

## 3. Cultural Heritage

### Representation

### Special Feature

<input type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Original home of the Kitasoo/Xaixais people Old Village sites, burial grounds. Very high archaeological and heritage values. Kitasoo/Xaixais Rediscovery site

## **12. Lockhart Gordon Protection Area**

Size: 33, 678 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of Lockhart protection area is to capture intact undeveloped old-growth watersheds and important Grizzly bear/ salmon interactions and habitat.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection.)*

- Provides opportunities for backcountry tourism and wildlife viewing.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Licence of Occupation for Commercial Purposes – File 5402095
- Notation for Miscellaneous Land Use – File 5404501
- Guide Outfitter Tenure

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Recreational fishing in Johnston Creek
- Commercial backcountry tours associated with adjacent anchorages
- Guide outfitting

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. The list should only be considered a starting point.)*

- Grizzly viewing opportunities associated with Lockhart Creek

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Human and wildlife interactions</b>	Manage the area to provide visitors with the opportunity for a wilderness experience, and to retain the natural character of the area by minimizing impacts on wildlife (Grizzly bears) and sensitive ecosystems
<b>Source of Information</b>	Local knowledge, technical planning team
<b>Priority for planning</b>	Low

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

### 1. Conservation

Representation

- ecosection ☐ Hel, NPR
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☐ AT,CWH vh2,  
CHWvm1,  
CWH vm2,  
MHmm1,  
MHwh
- Special Feature ☐
- Species of interest ☐ steelhead
- Rare/Endangered Species ☐ trumpeter swan, marbled murrelet

### 2. Recreation

Representation

- Backcountry ☒
- Destination ☐
- Travel corridor ☐
- Local recreation ☐

### 3. Cultural Heritage

- Representation ☐ High Use area by FN
- Special Feature ☐



## **Chapple/Cornwall Protection Area**

Size: 22,872 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Chapple/Cornwall area is the conservation and protection of Kermode bears and special and rare ecosystems.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The Chapple/Cornwall provides public recreation and commercial tourism opportunities that are sensitive to the values in the area.

### **Existing Tenures**

- Guide Outfitting
- Commercial recreation tenures
- Notation of Interest for a Boat Haven – File 6405453
- Order-in-Council Reserve – Miscellaneous Land Use – File 0186760
- Lease for Tidal Sports Fishing Camps – File 6403680
- Application for leases for commercial purposes – Files 6403554, 6403555

### **Existing Activities**

- Scenic/wildlife viewing, anchorage, diving, kayaking, sport fishing, hunting, trapping, hiking
- Commercial backcountry tourism (Destination Lodges) in association with adjacent anchorages

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Research and Education (Karst)
- Benchmark inventory and assessment

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Karst ecosystems management</b>	Detailed planning to address access and management plan to protect sensitive Karst features.
<b>Tourism and recreational development</b>	Manage the area to provide visitors with the opportunity for a wilderness experience, and to retain the natural character of the area by minimizing impacts on wildlife and sensitive ecosystems.
<b>Air access</b>	Detailed planning to address flight management for tourism and recreation related access to PA.
<b>Kermode Bear viewing management</b>	Further detailed planning is required to minimize impact to the bears while providing a high quality recreation and tourism experience.
<b>Sources of information</b>	CCGAT Report. Local knowledge.
<b>Prioritization of planning</b>	High priority.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ Hecate Lowlands, Kitimat Ranges
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWH vh2, CWH vm, MH mm1, MHwh1

Special Feature

- ☒ Karst Ecosystems,  
Black granite deposit,  
waterfalls/rapids and mudflats at  
Barnard Harbour,  
Cornwall Estuary is an excellent  
spring and fall forage area, uniquely  
large for Princess Royal Island with

Species of interest	<input type="checkbox"/>	valley bottom spruce/devil's club adjacent Rare ferns and bryophytes on karst, High seasonal concentration of black bear, waterfowl at Cornwall estuary Kermode bears (white phase of black bear)
Rare/Endangered Species	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Marbled Murrelet

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

Backcountry	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Hiking and bear viewing
Destination	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Travel corridor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Pleasure crafts and kayaks
Local recreation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Sport fishing, boating

## 3. Cultural Heritage

### Representation

### Special Feature

☐

## **14. Dean River Estuary & Corridor Protection Area**

Size: 5,071 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Dean River Protection Area is to protect the wilderness recreation and internationally important steelhead sport fishing experience along the provincially important Dean River.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The Dean River PA also captures important valley bottom riparian habitat important for fishery values. The estuary provides important habitat for a number of red and blue listed waterfowl species and grizzly bears.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses and Permits**

- Licence of Occupation for a Fishing Camp – File 5402884
- Licence of Occupation for a Hunting/Fishing Camp – File 5405907
- Leases for Hunting/Fishing Camps – Files 0347933, 0349932, 5405207
- Application for Licence of Occupation for commercial purposes – File 5406068
- Map reserve for roadway – File 5402829
- Map reserve for Fish & Wildlife Management – File 5400743
- Guide outfitter

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

Angling guiding, wildlife viewing, sport fishing, mushroom picking, hunting

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Bear viewing
- Collaborative management with the community of Bella Coola
- Backcountry commercial recreation
- Filming

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Conflicts between wildlife and recreational uses</b>	Recommend that issues be addressed in future detailed planning (e.g. waste disposal, commercial mushroom harvesting).
<b>Existing road corridor maintenance, upgrades and realignment may be required which may affect the wilderness experience</b>	Access to lands beyond will not be impeded. Recommend that issues be addressed in future detailed planning. Terrestrial Conservation sector opposes road construction within this protected area. The sector has advised the table that it will not block consensus on the basis of this opposition.
<b>Retention of classified waters system</b>	Retain the classified waters designation for the Dean River to maintain internationally Important tourism values.
<b>Conflict between Grizzly Bear Management Area Recommendation and existing uses</b>	Best management of grizzly bear values in relation to human activities (hunting, guiding, wildlife viewing, fishing, tourism, and access) needs to be resolved through a process convened by the responsible agency (Water, Land and Air Protection).
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT Report
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Highest priority in north Central Coast if adjacent areas are proposed for forest harvesting.

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

## 1. Conservation

### Representation

- ecosection
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant



Kitimat Ranges



CWHds2 and ms2

### Special Feature



Chum salmon spawn on the beach intertidal area. Grizzly bears access spawning salmon and eggs. This is an unique feature for tidal waters.

Collared bears from Kimsquit used Dean on regular basis; well documented use in lower Dean by grizzly bears

The estuary has high habitat values for waterfowl, for all species of anadromous salmon and grizzly bears

### Rare/Endangered Values



High habitat values for waterfowl including two blue listed species, the Trumpeter Swan and Great Blue Heron, as well as the red breasted merganser and Pacific loon

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

Backcountry



Wilderness fly-in fishing

Destination



Exceptional recreation destination. International renowned as a fly-in steelhead fishing river. Only Class 1 recreational sports-fishing (steelhead) river on the Central Coast

Travel corridor



Local recreation



Harvest of mushrooms, hunting and fishing

## 3. Cultural Heritage

### Representation



### Special Feature



## **15. Koeye Protection Area**

Size: 18,353 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Koeye Protection Area is to protect representative forests, coastal features and cultural heritage values characteristic of the Hecate Lowlands (HEL) ecosection, which is under-represented within the province's Protected Area system. The Koeye fills major representation gaps (CWHvh2) within the HEL.

Koeye is the only Protection Area in the HEL with low elevation, highly productive, temperate rainforests, provincially significant grizzly/salmon ecosystems and a very productive estuary with red and blue listed species and high biological diversity.

The PA provides connectivity from the Hakai Conservation Area to higher alpine areas, as well as protecting genetic strains of various plants and animals that are indigenous to the area.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The Koeye provides limited opportunities for commercial and public recreational use of the area, including wildlife viewing, and the harvesting of fish and shellfish. The mouth of the Koeye is also a Boat Haven and is an important area used by boats and ships in poor weather.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses and Permits**

- Guide outfitter
- Licence of Occupation for Hunting and Fishing Camp – File 5403544

### **Existing Activities**

*(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

- Angling guiding, hunting, boating, wildlife viewing, kayaking, anchorage

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Other Opportunities to be identified during site specific management planning
- Eco tourism "Old Growth Forest Ecosystem" interpretation in cooperation with destination lodges on adjacent private land

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Roads - Existing, active logging road (RO3588) enters watershed to the north via Nootum River then through the PA and then leaves the PA</b>	To be discussed in more detailed planning.
<b>Key features at mouth are located on private land</b>	Work with private landowner when completing detailed planning.
<b>Key features at mouth are located on private land an the Private Nature Trust Lands in estuary are integral to PA</b>	Work with private land owner when completing detailed planning should consider how to link the management of the Nature Trust private lands within the context of the Koeys PA
<b>Private fishing lodge at mouth owned by Ecotrust/Heiltsuk</b>	Work with Heiltsuk when completing more detailed planning.
<b>Motorized boat access on the river and impacts to fish and wildlife</b>	To be addressed during more detailed planning. Federal government mandate.
<b>Prioritization of planning</b>	High for detailed planning.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT Report

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ Hecate Lowland, Northern Pacific Ranges
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ AT , CWHvh2, MHwh1 in the HEL  
45 ha to ATp, MHmm1, CWHvm2 in the NPR



Special Feature	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<p>Old growth temperate rainforest; river and estuary with productive wetlands supporting red and blue-listed waterfowl; high value grizzly bear habitat; very high salmonid values</p> <p>Unique estuary, very early phenology compared to 'inland estuaries' (such as those as the heads of the inlets)</p> <p>Intact, outer coastal watershed with fair documentation of value and use by grizzly bears (CHWvh2 extensive)</p> <p>Linked to non-wilderness, but nevertheless high grizzly value watersheds such as the Doris/McNair, and over to Milton/Chuckwalla - Kilbella (and into Nootum)</p> <p>Fishing by grizzlies well documented</p> <p>DFO considers the Koeys a Class 1 river for habitat protection purposes.</p> <p>Third highest salmon producer in DFO statistical area 6</p> <p>The forests are more productive than usual for this outer coastal eco-section</p>
Species of interest	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<p>Grizzly bear, crabs, Black bear, wolf, deer, cougar, mountain goat, wolverine, river otter, and fur bearers, resident rainbow trout, cutthroat trout, salmon (all species)</p>
Rare/Endangered Values	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<p>Red and blue listed waterfowl, such as western grebe, trumpeter swans, and marbled murrelets.</p>
Scientific/Research Opportunities	<input type="checkbox"/>	

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

Backcountry

☐

Destination

☒

Section 12 Boat haven Reserve, but only a moderate anchorage, as much of bay open to swells form Hakai pass

Travel corridor

☒

On Inside passage route, stopover for kayakers and boaters

Local recreation

☐

Special Opportunities

☒

## 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation

☐

Special Feature

☒

Numerous important archaeological sites and features are found on the Koeye,

## **16. Kitasoo Spirit Bear Protection Area**

Size: 90,460 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Kitasoo Spirit Bear area is conservation and protection of Kermode bears and special and rare ecosystems.

The Kitasoo Spirit Bear contributes to a network of protection areas, which capture a cross section of biodiversity from Island type ecosystems to Interior ecosystems.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The area also provides public recreation and commercial tourism opportunities.

### **Existing Tenures**

- Guide outfitter
- Licence Of Occupation -Tidal Sports Fishing Camp – File 6404893
- Notation Of Interest - Boat Haven – File 6405451
- Application For Cr Licence - S/Water Rec – File 5406589 - Offered
- Application for license of occupation -bear viewing- File 6406912
- Application for license of occupation - wildlife viewing - File6406918
- Application For Licence Of Occupation - heli-ski - File 6407312
- Application For Licence Of Occupation - bear viewing - File6406912
- Application For Licence Of Occupation - hunting camps – File 6406614
- License Of Occupation -nature viewing – File 6406899
- License Of Occupation - hunting camps – File 6401134

### **Existing Activities**

- Scenic/wildlife viewing, anchorage, kayaking, fishing, hunting, trapping, hiking.
- Commercial tourism (wildlife viewing and sail cruise operations)

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Collaborative management with community of Klemtu

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Impacts of recreation and tourism activities</b>	Manage the area to provide visitors with the opportunity for a wilderness experience, and to retain the natural character of the area by minimizing impacts on wildlife and sensitive ecosystems.
<b>Upland infrastructure for fish farm s</b>	Recommend that issues be addressed in future detailed planning. Link to Salmon Aquaculture Review recommendations.
<b>Kermode Bear viewing – human / wildlife interaction</b>	Further detailed planning is required to minimize impact to the bears while providing a high quality recreation and tourism experience.
<b>Prioritization of planning</b>	High priority for tourism/recreation plan.
<b>Source of Information</b>	CGAT

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

## 1. Conservation

### Representation

- ecosection ☒ Hecate Lowlands and Kitimat Range Transition Zone
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWH vm1, MH mm1, CWH vh

### Special Feature

- ☒ The Laredo inlet has outstanding value as Kermode bear habitat
- Salmon spawning/bear fishing extensive
- Important Marbled Murrelet habitat
- Important Bald eagle Nesting sites

### Rare/Endangered Values

- ☒ Kermode bear and Marbled Murrelet
- Rare ecosystems

## 2. Recreation

Representation

Backcountry

☐

Destination

☒

Hiking and bear viewing

Travel corridor

☒

Marine corridor for pleasure craft and kayaks

Local recreation

☒

Sport fishing, pleasure crafts and kayaks

## 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation

☐

Special Feature

☐

## **17. Estero Basin Protected Area**

Size: 2,322 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Estero PA is to provide opportunities for remote backcountry recreation and tourism activities. The natural setting provides the backdrop for kayaking/canoeing route.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The PA also helps fill gaps in the Outer Fiordland ecosection. Possible conservations special features.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Guide outfitter

### **Existing Activities**

- Camping, Hiking, kayaking, canoeing, wildlife viewing
- Guide outfitting
- Commercially guided trips
- Hunting and fishing

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Potential day trips to Estero Basin from adjacent communities, resorts and cruise ships.

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Potential for special conservation features associated with the lake</b>	Recommend that values be identified and appropriate management actions be taken.
<b>Adjacent forest harvesting and access through the Protection Area to stands surrounded by the PA and to stands beyond. The current corridor is a best estimate map projection</b>	Access planning required at lower level to refine the actual location of the access corridor.  Forest development activities for operational area (surrounded by PA) to take place outside the June 15th to September 15th tourism window subject to a collaborative process for accommodating operational issues during the Tourism window.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	Local Tourism and Recreation knowledge, TPT
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Low

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ Outer Fiordland
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☐
- Special Feature ☒ Brackish water lagoon
- Species of Interest ☐
- Rare/Endangered Values ☐

**2. Recreation**

Representation

- Backcountry ☒ kayaking
- Destination ☒ hunting, camping
- Travel corridor ☐
- Local recreation ☒ kayaking

**3. Cultural Heritage**

- Representation ☐
- Special Feature ☐



## **18. Racey Inlet / Helmcken Protection Area**

Size: 6,391 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Racey Inlet and Helmcken PA is to protect cultural heritage values and traditional harvesting resources and to maintain wilderness recreation and tourism resource values surrounding the boat havens/anchorages in Racey, Evinrude, Commando and Helmcken Inlets.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The Racey Inlet and Helmcken PA also encompasses numerous small lakes and wetlands with high wildlife and migratory bird values.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses, Permits and Applications**

- Guide outfitter
- Application for Commercial Recreation Licence for Salt Water Recreation – File 5406589

### **Existing Activities**

- Safe haven, Anchorage, boating, kayaking, sport fishing, camping
- scenic waterfalls (not visible from anchorage)
- Hiking
- Guide outfitting
- Traditional use for hunting and fishing

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Collaborative management with community of Hartley Bay
- Eco-tourism

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>First Nations Interests (rights and title)</b>	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>Sources of Information</b>	CCGAT
<b>Prioritization of Planning</b>	Moderate

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

**1. Conservation**

Representation

- ecosection ☒ Hecate Lowlands
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWH vh
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWHvm
- biogeoclimatic site series ☒ CWHvh2/01
- biogeoclimatic site series ☒ CWHvh2/04
- biogeoclimatic site series ☒ CWHvh2/11
- biogeoclimatic site series ☒ CWHvm2/31

Special Feature ☒ scenic waterfall (not visible from anchorage)

Rare/Endangered Values ☐

**2. Recreation**

Representation

- Backcountry ☐
- Destination ☒ Wildlife viewing, anchorage, hiking, hunting
- Travel corridor ☒ For travel around Princess Royal Island, kayaking, boating
- Local recreation ☒ Scenic viewing, Sport Fishing, hiking, hunting

### 3. Cultural Heritage

Representation



High FN values in Racey Inlet, Evinrude Inlet, Commando Inlet, Helmcken Inlet and adjacent watersheds. Important area for Blackfish Clan. Contains former seasonal campsites. Traditional uses include fishing, hunting and trapping

Special Feature



Old seasonal camps, traplines.

## 19. Khutze Protection Area

Size: 34,504 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Khutze Protection Area is to protect and preserve significant provincial features including salmon/grizzly bear ecosystems, the estuary ecosystem, low elevation Sitka spruce forests, and a diversity of habitat types.

The Khutze contributes to the Khutze benchmark Grizzly Bear Management Area on the Coast of British Columbia.

The Protection Area will provide long term opportunity for study and research of grizzly bears, natural aquatic and forest upland ecosystems and protect genetic strains of various plants and animals that are indigenous to the area.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

Khutze also provides for numerous recreation activities and is adjacent to the main Inside Passage route.

### **Existing Tenures**

- Guide tenures
- Notation of Interest for a Boat Haven – File 6405455

### **Existing Activities**

- Scenic/wildlife viewing, Anchorage, kayaking, fishing, hunting, hiking(limited),

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- wildlife viewing;
- adventure tourism (pocket Cruising way point); kayaking; canoeing, boating and sportfishing

### **Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
First Nations Interests (Rights and Title)	Address through high level government to government discussions
Intensity of tourism/recreation activities	Activities to be low impact and sensitive to existing activities and environment. Further planning may be warranted to determine levels and amount of use in order to maintain values.

<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
Designation of Grizzly Bear Management Area and conflict with existing uses.	No grizzly bear hunting is permitted in the Grizzly Bear Management Area. WLAP to lead process to resolve management and existing uses.
Prioritization of Planning:	High priority.
Sources of Information:	CCGAT Report. Local knowledge.

**Summary of Values** (*the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.*)

## 1. Conservation

### Representation

- ecosection ☒ Kitimat Ranges Ecosection
- biogeoclimatic subzone/variant ☒ CWHvm1, CWHvm2

### Special Feature

- ☒ Salmon spawning/bear fishing Extensive  
A rating scheme for B.C.'s major Coastal Wetlands assigned a biological ranking of 9 out of 10  
- The Khutze estuary combines a broad floodplain supporting extensive fertile meadows with dense cover along their edges. A north-facing avalanche chute giving access to alpine habitat lies at the south edge of the estuary

### Species of interest

- ☒ grizzly bear habitat  
- Chinook, Chum, Coho, Pink and Sockeye are all present, especially East Khutze River and Marshall Creek  
- Low elevation Sitka spruce

### Rare/Endangered Values

- ☒ - Counts of up to 400 marbled murrelets  
- Rare ecosystems (floodplain spruce forests, and others as yet unidentified)

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

Backcountry

☐

Destination

☐

Travel corridor

☒

This area is a key anchorage adjacent to main Inside Passage route.

Local recreation

☒

Fishing

## 3. Cultural Heritage

### Representation

☐

### Special Feature

☒

Historic railway and gold mine

## 20. Upper Kimsquit Protection Area

Size: 10,596 hectares

### **Primary Role** *(The main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of the Upper Kimsquit Protection Area is to protect a unique habitat feature of critical importance to grizzly bears.

The Upper Kimsquit contributes to the Khutze benchmark Grizzly Bear Management Area on the Coast of British Columbia.

### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

The Upper Kimsquit provides additional ecological integrity to the Kitlope, Fiordland, and Tweedsmuir Protected areas. This low elevation pass is considered to be a “grizzly-bear pipeline” from the Kitlope to the lower Kimsquit.

The PA also represents a portion of the historic First Nation grease trail from the Dean to the Kitlope.

### **Existing Tenures, Licenses and Permits**

- Guide outfitter
- Notation of Interest ENVP - File 5405896

### **Existing Activities** *(Includes non-tenured activities.)*

Fly in air based recreation activities, wildlife viewing, guide outfitting

**Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- 

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
First Nations Interests (Rights and Title)	Address through high level government to government discussions
Designation of Grizzly Bear Management Area and conflict with existing uses.	No grizzly bear hunting is permitted in the Grizzly Bear Management Area. WLAP to lead process to resolve management and existing uses
Sources of Information:	CCGAT Report
Prioritization of Planning:	Moderate

**Summary of Values** *(This section provides the list of conservation, recreation and cultural heritage values that are known to exist in the Protection Area. Gaps may exist in information sources and inventory, and other significant values may be missing.)*

## 1. Conservation

### Representation

- |                                  |                                     |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| - ecosection                     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | KIR,                                |
| - biogeoclimatic subzone/variant | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | CWHws2 priority gap<br>MHmm2<br>ATp |

### Special Feature

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | -Unique grizzly/salmon features found nowhere else in the province<br>- Low elevation pass to Kitlope at Kimsquit Lake<br>- The entire drainage system represents the transition from south ecosystems and north ecosystems and the division between coastal and interior ecosystems in B.C.<br>- Ecological connectivity with Kitlope, Fiordland and Tweedsmuir areas. Bears gather at the lake and upper Kimsquit River from all of these areas |
|-------------------------------------|---|

### Species of Interest

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | grizzly bears, deer, goat, moose |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|

### Rare/Endangered species

<input type="checkbox"/>	
--------------------------	--

## 2. Recreation

### Representation

- |                  |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| backcountry      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| destination      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| travel corridor  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| local recreation | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

### Special Opportunities

<input type="checkbox"/>	
--------------------------	--

## 3. Cultural Heritage

### Representation

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | First Nations grease trail to the Kitlope |
|-------------------------------------|---|

### Special Feature

<input type="checkbox"/>	
--------------------------	--



## **21. Estuaries and Wetlands:**

Bella Coola Estuary	Nekite Estuary
Bentinck Estuaries	Phillips Estuary
Clyak Estuary	Quatelena Estuary
Kilbella/Chuckwalla Estuary	Seymour Estuary
Kimsquit Estuary	Skowquiltz Estuary
Kingcome Estuary	Stafford Estuary
Klinaklini Estuary	Wakeman Estuary
Kwatna Estuary	Genessee Wetland
Thorsen Creek	Sheemahant Wetland

### **Protection Area Management Direction: Summary**

All estuaries/ wetlands have the same primary role. Other roles and management issues have been identified for specific estuaries/ wetlands mentioned below. The prioritization for planning is low for most areas except where noted in the table below.

### **Primary Role : All estuaries and wetlands** *(Main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role is to protect the estuary/ wetland biophysical unit and high biodiversity values associated with fish and wildlife habitats present in these areas.

Thorsen Creek: Primary role is to protect the culturally significant petroglyphs.

### **Other Roles** *Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

These PA's also provide for backcountry tourism and recreation activities that are consistent with estuary values.

Thorsen Creek: Education and Interpretation

### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Generally the opportunities associated with these sites are guide outfitting, wildlife viewing, hunting and fishing.

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Protection Area</b>	<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>Bella Coola Estuary</b>	Adjacent industrial uses	Develop Bella Coola Estuary Plan in context of the upland uses and in consultation with communities.
<b>All PAs</b>	First Nations Interests (rights and title)	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>All PAs</b>	Access including shoreline infrastructure tied to upland developments	Access to lands beyond to be permitted subject to recognition and conservation of the unique fish and wildlife habitat values associated with estuaries.
<b>Bella Coola Estuary, Bentinck Estuaries, Klinaklini, Nekite, Seymour</b>	Intensity of recreational use.	Activities to be low impact and sensitive to existing estuary values. Further planning may be warranted to determine levels and amount of use in order to maintain values.
<b>All PAs</b>	Grizzly Bear and human interactions.	Best management of grizzly bear values in relation to human activities (hunting, guiding, wildlife viewing, fishing, tourism, and access) needs to be resolved through a process convened by the responsible agency (Water, Land and Air Protection).
<b>Seymour</b>	Rotary and fixed wing air access for angling	Allowed, as long as wildlife issues addressed.

**Prioritization for Planning**

<b>Protection Area</b>	<b>Priority</b>
Bella Coola Estuary	High
Kimsquit	Moderate
Bentinck Estuaries	Moderate

Klinaklini Estuary  
Seymour Estuary

Moderate  
Moderate

### **23. Islands and Islets:**

Admiral Group	
Barry Islet	Miles Island
Burdwood Group	Numas Island
Creery Islands	Prince Group
Deserters-Walkers Islands	Princess Alice Island
Dodwell Island	Polkinghorn
Gillard	Smithers Island
Horsfall Island	Tribal Group
Lady Douglas / Oliver Cove	Yorke Island
McMullen Group	

### **Protection Area Management Direction: Summary**

#### **Primary Role** *(Main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

All islands/ islets have the same primary role of providing for backcountry tourism and recreation activities. Exceptions:

- Barry Islets, Deserters/Walkers, McMullen Group, Numas Island; protection of an area associated with rich marine biodiversity
- Horsfall Island; representation of the Hecate Lowland ecosection.
- Yorke Island: Cultural site (WWII)

#### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

- Barry Islets, Horsfall Is., McMullen Group, Numas; backcountry recreation activities
- Lady Douglas/Oliver Cove, Deserters/Walkers: representation of gaps in specific ecosections
- Yorke Island: backcountry recreation activities.

#### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Generally the opportunities are associated with backcountry tourism and recreation activities including guide outfitting, wildlife viewing, hunting and fishing.

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b>Protection Area</b>	<b>Known Management Issues</b>	<b>Response</b>
<b>All PAs</b>	First Nations Interests (rights and title)	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>McMullen Group</b>	Recreational impact on sea otter population	Timing and intensity of use needs to be monitored and considered in future applications.
<b>Burdwood Group</b> <b>Barry Islet</b> <b>Deserter Walker Group</b> <b>Numas</b> <b>Polkinghorn</b>	Intensity of tourism/recreation activities	Activities to be low impact and sensitive to existing marine based activities and environment. Further planning may be warranted to determine levels and amount of use in order to maintain values.
<b>Lady Douglas / Oliver Cove</b>	Access shoreline infrastructure tied to upland developments	Access to lands beyond to be permitted subject to conservation and recognition of recreational and tourism values and ecosection representation.

### **Prioritization for Planning**

- Low for all Islands and Islets
- Exception: Moderate for Barry Islet, Deserters/ Walkers, Polkinghorn

## **24. Bays, Harbours, Extensions, Passages:**

Carter Bay <sup>1</sup>	Rescue Bay <sup>2</sup>
Codville Extension	Restoration Bay
Cullen Harbour	Thurston Bay Extension
Eucott Bay	Troup Passage
Port John Arch Site	Boat Bay
Forward Harbour	Goat Cove <sup>3</sup>

### **Protection Area Management Direction: Summary:**

#### **Primary Role** *(Main reason(s) the area was recommended for protection)*

The primary role of most of the PAs is to protect backcountry tourism and recreation values (i.e. marine based recreation activities). A primary goal of Cullen Harbour, Troup Passage, Rescue Bay, Forward Harbour and Goat Cove is to protect a system of anchorages.

Exceptions:

- Codville Extension: fills gaps in the Hecate Lowland ecosection.
- Port John Arch. Site, Restoration Bay: protection of known archaeological and post contact cultural sites.

#### **Other Roles** *(Other considerations in support of why the area was recommended for protection)*

- Troup Passage : representation of gaps in specific ecosections.
- Eucott Bay: protection of hot springs.
- Carter Bay: protect cultural heritage (wreck of the Ohio)
- Boat Bay :research opportunities associated with whales and Robson Bight
- Cullen Harbour :protection of MAMU nesting habitat

#### **Opportunities** *(Given the roles and values for which the area was recommended for protection, these are some examples of management and/or use opportunities that may be considered. It is not an exhaustive list of acceptable activities.)*

- Generally the opportunities are associated with backcountry tourism and recreation activities including guide outfitting, wildlife viewing, hunting and fishing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Kitasoo First Nation are opposed to this proposal.

<sup>2</sup> Kitasoo First Nation are opposed to this proposal.

<sup>3</sup> Kitasoo First Nation are opposed to this proposal.

**Management Issues** *(This refers to: issues to be addressed, items to be incorporated or management recommendations.)*

<b><i>Protection Area</i></b>	<b><i>Known Management Issues</i></b>	<b><i>Response</i></b>
<b>All PAs</b>	First Nations Interests (rights and title)	Address through high level government to government discussions.
<b>All PAs</b>	Access including shoreline infrastructure tied to upland developments	Access to lands beyond to be permitted subject to conservation and recognition of recreational and tourism values.
<b>Eucott Bay</b>	Intensity of tourism/recreation activities associated with hot springs	Intensity of use to be monitored and considered in future applications.
	Save and except mineral tenure 353074.	Check status of this tenure prior to designation.

**Prioritization for Planning**

Low for all except Troup Passage, which is moderate.

## Appendix 6 – Visuals Management Agreement and Examples

---

## **Visual Management Agreement**

### **Chair Report: Major Forestry/Tourism bilateral negotiations**

#### **CCLRMP Area Specific Direction proposal**

##### **Background and Purpose:**

In July 2003, the Visuals subcommittee requested that the major forestry sector and the Tourism sector proceed with bilateral discussion to attempt to develop a break through proposal to address visual management within the Central Coast Plan Area. These two sectors requested the facilitation assistance of the Process Chair.

Since that time seven meetings have been held between the two groups with occasional invited participation of the Recreation Sector. The purpose of the discussions has been to develop a visual management proposal for coastal viewscape considered most important for the tourism and recreation resource. The collaborative approach used has been based on the development of a business to business relationship that minimizes impact to operations, quantifies benefits and increases certainty for both sectors.

##### **Approach:**

Both groups agreed to develop a zoning approach to the coastal visual management area that moved away from polygon specific VQO's. Instead of relying on the standard visual management system of setting visual quality objectives viewscapes by viewscapes, the new strategy identifies four types of zones that fit with the experience of travelling through the area.

Zoning systems and maps developed by both sectors were reviewed and compared, and areas of agreement identified. Remaining areas of disagreement were reviewed in light of overlap with THLB to further inform value tradeoffs. Areas located outside of the coastal visual zone were not considered and within the coastal visual zone, areas of prime importance were focussed on for visual management. CPA's and existing Parks were accepted as undisturbed; zoning of these areas was not considered to be required.

Tourism identified major travel (cruise ship, pocket cruise and highway) corridors, lodges and marine approaches to protected areas as being of primary importance. Important operational areas for forestry were identified and accommodated in terms of visual management by the Tourism sector.

Zoning descriptions were developed that technically referenced the intent of each zone through illustrations, descriptions and range of perspective disturbance in each zone. The goal of these zones is to determine the timber-harvesting regime that can ensure the short and long term integrity of important visual areas in a fashion that is compatible with the short and long-term viability of the forest industry.



## **Tourism/Major Forestry Proposal recommended to Completion Table**

### **1) Zoning:**

The zoning system goal is to maintain the overall desired visual quality experience in a relative sense for the zone as a whole. Four visual management zone descriptions and prescriptions have been identified.

Three zones are managed from the perspective that viewers are moving through the area:

- Wild Zone
- Natural Variability Zone
- Landscape Forestry Zone

The fourth zone addresses the need to incorporate the 'static' viewing experience from lodges or other high use non-moving locations:

- Special Viewscape Zone

In the Special Viewscape Zone, a specific visual objective is established individually for the prominent viewscape as seen from a currently existing facility.

The definition and management of the zones is based on word descriptions and alteration limits as noted in Table 1.

The attached image examples further defines the 'look' of the different zones by showing the same landscapes with different levels of acceptable alterations.

In addition to the management strategies outlined above, the following site specific clarifications are agreed:

- **Broughton Wild Zone** – no operating windows are imposed on Interfor's Scott Cove and Viner sound logging operations. Existing 'category A' blocks in Weyerhaeuser's operations can proceed according to plan. Wild zone standards will be applied to new planning. A temporary joint working group will be formed to review any issues related to the planned developments on west Harbledown Island.
- **Rippon Island:** This island is within the Wild Zone designation, however, current harvesting plans will proceed in accordance with the Forest Development Plan. Tourism operators will work with the Oweekeno Nation to define the long term visual management approach for this area.

### **2) Visual Zone Mapping:**

- The attached maps (Map 13, Appendix 1) are intended to geographically reference the recommended visual management zones and are recommended as area specific direction within the EBM Operating Zone of the Central Coast plan area.
- Protection Areas are an integral component of the zoning strategy and are considered to be undisturbed.

### **3) Proposed additional activities:**

Both sectors view the successful collaboration regarding visual zoning within the plan area as an important step in building a long term relationship between the two industries. A bilateral agreement is proposed which will confirm the visual zoning proposal and clarify the support that the Tourism sector is prepared to

offer the Forestry sector in terms of public relations and communications to the benefit of both sectors.

In addition, a joint committee is proposed that would ensure the successful implementation of both the visual management regime and the joint marketing support to customers of both sectors.

4) **Summary**

Proposed Motions for CCLRMP Table Consideration:

***Motion: Visual Management Direction within EBM operating area***

**The CCLRMP Completion Table adopts the visual management recommendations as developed by the Tourism and Major Forestry Sector including:**

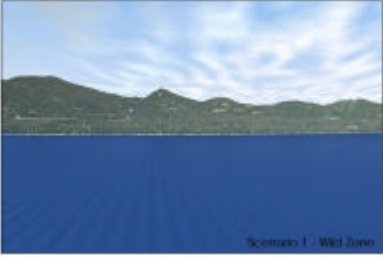
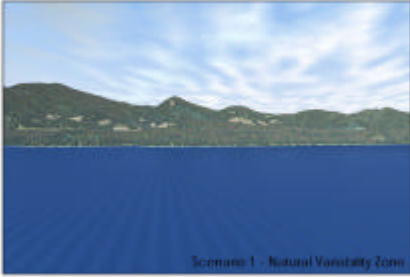
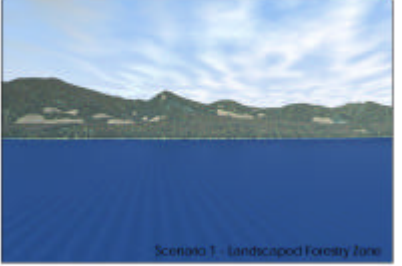
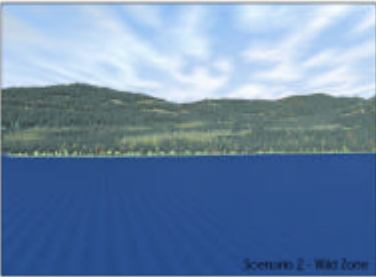
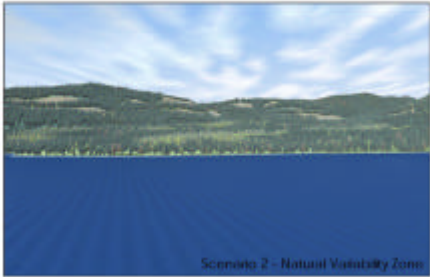
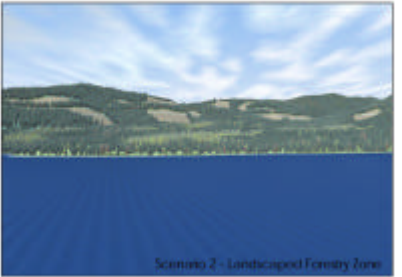
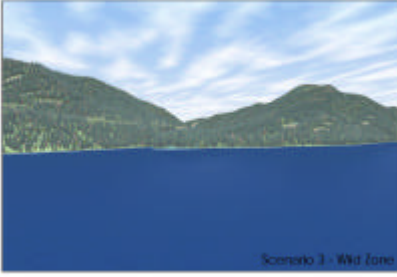
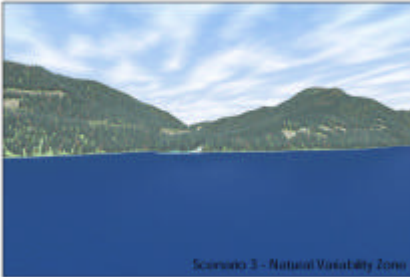
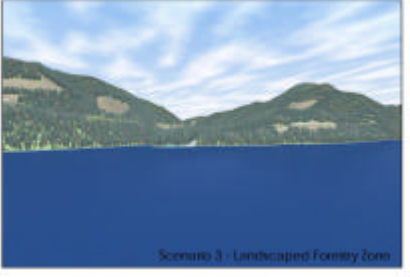
- *The Visual Management Zone descriptions and prescriptions:*
  - *Wild*
  - *Natural Variability*
  - *Landscape Forestry*
  - *Special*
- *The accompanying visual zone maps dated November 25, 2003*
- *Recommending that the visual zonation system replace the formal VQC system within the Central Coast plan area.*

**The CCLRMP Completion Table supports the Tourism and Major Forestry Sectors' efforts in establishing a long term relationship through the development of agreements and protocols**

**Table 6-1: Visual Management Zone Descriptions and Prescriptions**

Visual Zone	General Objective	Alteration Guideline	Max Alteration	Management Standards
<b>Wild Zone</b>	The intention of this zone is to ensure the perception of wildness. This means that a wild scenic experience is sought whereby visually unaltered landscapes predominate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Very high proportion of landscape continuum in a wild appearance condition.</li> <li>* Low proportion of landscape continuum in very carefully altered visual state.</li> <li>* Innovative, visually sensitive harvesting techniques are encouraged.</li> </ul>	2%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment using digital terrain modeling to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Maintain continuous and effective shoreline buffer (while still permitting careful installation of shoreline facilities and access infrastructure like log dumps that are designed to minimize visual impacts). Low impact, not visually apparent selection hand logging permitted along shoreline.</li> <li>• Intention is to maintain the visual experience over time. To ensure this, visually effective green-up periods will be implemented and monitored to achieve the General Objective of the zone.</li> </ul> <p>Agreement between the forestry and tourism operators will be established for logging operations between June 15 – September 15.</p>
<b>Natural Variability Zone</b>	Visual alterations in keeping with natural visual experience where activities blend with landscape and do not readily alter visual experience.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* High proportion of landscape continuum in naturally appearing condition.</li> <li>* Low proportion of landscape continuum in carefully altered visual state.</li> </ul>	5%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Continuous shoreline buffer with minor gaps maintained. Low impact selection hand logging and limited, water based highlead logging permitted along shoreline.</li> <li>• Practical timing windows for active logging operations may be established in consultation with tourism operators.</li> </ul>
<b>Landscaped Forestry Zone</b>	Aesthetically pleasing scenic experience where activities are evident but subordinate. Design of alterations to create impression of careful and respectful land use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Majority of landscape continuum in naturally appearing condition.</li> <li>* Low proportion of landscape continuum in readily visible but carefully altered visual state.</li> <li>* Development evident throughout zone but subordinate.</li> </ul>	8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessments to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Continuous shoreline buffer with minor gaps maintained. Low impact selection hand logging and limited, water based highlead logging permitted along shoreline.</li> </ul>
<b>Special Viewscape</b>	Manage specified facility based viewscape to maintain or improve visual quality.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Maintain or improve visual quality through time.</li> <li>* Establishment of specific activities within viewscape to be done collaboratively with the agreement of operators.</li> </ul>	By agreement based on existing level of disturbance of the forest in the facility's viewscape.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual design assessment using digital terrain modelling to be completed for developments proposed in visible areas.</li> <li>• Involve the interested stakeholder in the development of the visual design prescription.</li> <li>• Agreement between the forestry and tourism operators will be established for logging operations between June 15 -September 15.</li> </ul>

## Visuals Management Agreement Examples

Wild Zone	Natural Variability Zone	Landscape Forestry Zone
 <p>Scenario 1 - Wild Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 1 - Natural Variability Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 1 - Landscaped Forestry Zone</p>
 <p>Scenario 2 - Wild Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 2 - Natural Variability Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 2 - Landscaped Forestry Zone</p>
 <p>Scenario 3 - Wild Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 3 - Natural Variability Zone</p>	 <p>Scenario 3 - Landscaped Forestry Zone</p>

## **Appendix 7 – EBM Handbook**

---

EBM Planning Handbook is available at:

<http://www.citbc.org/ebmplan.html>

For other CIT information please refer to the CIT web site at:

[www.citbc.org](http://www.citbc.org)

## Appendix 8 – Unresolved General Management Objectives and Strategies

---

As indicated in Chapter 4, this Appendix contains a complete listing of all strategies still under discussion at the time of the deadline for CCLCRMP completion table. This appendix does not include objectives and strategies specifically addressed in the EBM Handbook.

This listing is provided for information only and on the clear understanding that (i) these have not been agreed to, (ii) they are listed only to demonstrate the full range of potential strategies under discussion, (iii) the list is not a complete list of the strategies discussed or contemplated by the Completion Table during its deliberations, and (iv) the final strategies for each objective as determined through government-to-government decisions may include some or all of the strategies as listed below, either as is or amended, and/or additional and/or entirely different strategies. It is to be noted that the objectives as listed below are as agreed to in Chapter 4 of the Completion Table Report – it is only the listed strategies themselves that were outstanding at the deadline for completion.

### **4.2.2 HYDRORIPARIAN AND AQUATIC ECOSYSTEMS**

#### **Aquatic Eco-systems**

Objective: Designate and protect sensitive and high value watersheds

### **4.2.3 FISH AND WILDLIFE HABITAT**

#### **Red/Blue Listed, Regionally Rare, and Focal Species Habitat**

- Implement and designate Ungulate Winter Ranges (UWRs) for mountain goats, deer and moose (as per the Forest and Range Practices Act or FRPA).
- Designate Wildlife Habitat Areas (WHAs) as per the Identified Wildlife Management Strategy (IWMS) for marbled murrelets, northern goshawks, grizzly bears, tailed frogs and other IWMS wildlife.
- Plan and provide for a wide variety of habitats for fish and wildlife in forested and non forested ecosystems.

#### **Critical Wildlife Habitat Features**

- No herbicide, pesticide or fungicide application in high value wildlife habitat or within UWRs, WHAs or IWMS or SARA identified species habitats.

#### **Raptor, Waterfowl, Furbearer and Bat Species**

- A. Manage forest, land and resource developments to sustain a diversity of raptor, waterfowl, furbearer and bat species.

- MWLAP will develop and recommend Best Management guidelines for habitat management and protection of raptors, waterfowl, furbearers and bats to the EBM Council in consultation with First Nations and local communities.
- Protect identified critical habitat features for raptors, furbearers, bats and waterfowl.
- Where WLAP has identified the bat sub-species present (ssp), known hibernacula, maternity colonies, roosting sites, adjacent foraging areas, movement corridors, and habitat management requirements for the bat ssp will be identified.
- Industrial access in and around wetlands will be minimize during the breeding season (consult with the First Nations, local communities and WLAP staff for breeding season time frames depending on species present).
- Eagle nests identified at the site scale will be managed to minimize impacts from logging and other resource developments.
- Reduce use of insecticides during nesting, moulting, hatching and fledgling time

### **Inventory**

- Establish precautionary levels for fish and wildlife populations based on inventory.

### **Critical Habitat**

#### **A. Protect critical habitat for Marbled Murrelet (MAMU)<sup>1</sup>.**

- Suitable habitat for MAMU will be designated as WHAs as outlined the IWMS and other MAMU initiatives.
  - Maintain an appropriate quantity and quality of MAMU nesting habitat as per recommendations.
  - Where feasible, locate suitable nesting habitat to also meet the objectives for biodiversity e.g., red-listed plant communities, wildlife tree patches, old growth retention areas and riparian reserves.
  - Maintain larger contiguous areas of mature or old forest where possible to avoid fragmentation of habitat.
  - Patch size distribution should consider the potential for optimizing the functional integrity of MAMU habitat.
- 

#### **B. Protect critical nesting and foraging habitat for Northern Goshawk (NOGO).**

- Suitable habitat for NOGO will be designated as Wildlife Habitat Areas as outlined in the IWMS.
  - Maintain all known NOGO nest areas with sufficient mature and old growth forest to allow continued occupancy and successful reproduction.
  - Maintain sufficient foraging habitat adjacent to nest areas to allow continued occupation of the breeding territory.
  - Plan to include nest areas in Ungulate Winter Ranges (UWRs), OGMAs, and other retention areas.
- 

#### **C. Maintain critical habitat for moose, deer and goats<sup>2</sup>.**

---

<sup>1</sup> For more information, see the MAMU habitat suitability map from Phase 1 at: <ftp://ftp.env.gov.bc.ca/dist/rmd/landuse/lrmp/ccost/maps/jpeg/mamu400.jpeg>

<sup>2</sup> For more information on Goats, see the Goat habitat suitability map from Phase 1 at: <ftp://ftp.env.gov.bc.ca/dist/rmd/landuse/lrmp/ccost/maps/jpeg/goats400.jpeg>

- Based on inventory, high value moose, deer, and mountain goat winter range will be confirmed and established as UWRs as per the Forest and Range Practices Act (FRPA).
  - Appropriate silvicultural techniques will be applied to forest developments within and adjacent to identified winter range areas.
  - Ensure ongoing inventory and monitoring.
  - Winter range areas will be located to incorporate forest interior conditions and where possible combined with WHAs, OGMAs and other retention areas.
  - Provide high suitability snow interception cover and foraging opportunities at landscape and stand scale.
  - Manage for abundant shrub species which are preferred browse species.
  - Do not use aerial herbicide applications in winter ranges.
  - Sanitation or salvage activities may occur within winter ranges.
  - Maintain or enhance forage production (manage for the desired plant community) in mountain goat winter ranges.
  - Important mountain goat habitats (mineral licks, natal areas, etc.) adjacent to or near escape terrain and available forage will be maintained.
  - Maintain forest cover adjacent to escape terrain.
  - Avoid the promotion of recreational activity in winter ranges.
  - Heli-skiing may be permitted within identified mountain goat winter habitat provided the area is unoccupied.
- 

D. Protect critical habitat for Kermode bears in the Tolmie Landscape unit (and others if applicable).

- The province to work with forest licensees, First Nations and the community to develop critical Kermode bear foraging habitat mitigation and restoration requirements by:
    - classifying and mapping bear habitat at an appropriate scale;
    - evaluating seasonal habitats and develop seasonal capability and suitability ratings;
    - modifying capability/ suitability ratings for habitat alteration; and
    - modifying habitat suitability ratings for patch-specific attributes.
  - The province to work with forest licensees, First Nations and communities to develop operational guidelines for bear patch mitigation and restoration. Guidelines shall address roadway rehabilitation, use of prescribed fire, silviculture treatments for small clustered stands, stand tending to lower than normal stem densities, etc.
- 

E. Protect critical habitat for Tailed Frogs.

- Suitable habitat for tailed frogs will be designated as WHAs as outlined in the IWMS.
  - In streams designated as WHAs for tailed frogs, maintain water quality, flow regimes and sediment free undisturbed areas.
  - Maintain structural elements of mature forest adjacent to tailed frog WHAs (e.g. large woody debris and cover for shade to maintain cool moist temperatures).
  - Maintain wind firmness, stable channel beds with coarse rocky substrates and coarse woody debris in tailed frog WHAs.
-



#### 4.2.4 GRIZZLY BEAR

**Population** – Maintain the abundance and diversity of Grizzly Bears in the LRMP area.

- If populations fall below minimum viable population estimates for the plan area as a whole, management will be coordinated with planning areas outside of the Central Coast area.
  - Bear mortality from all human causes is not to exceed 4% of the estimated population.
  - Less than 30% of bear mortality is female.
- 

**Forage** – Maintain adequate forage for grizzly bears within managed forest stands by maintaining productive understories and natural levels of downed wood.

- Limit Crown closure within regenerating stands.
  - Retain 50 – 100% of existing pieces of large woody debris, where supply of coarse woody debris is shown through assessment to be adequate at the watershed scale less than 100% can be retained.
  - Assess the implications to bear foraging of reduced large woody debris in second growth stands..
- 

**Habitat** – Maintain the function of and connectivity amongst critical grizzly bear habitats<sup>3</sup>, including functional visual (security) and resting (bedding) cover.

- No alteration of critical habitats, unless no practicable alternative exists. Where alteration within critical habitats is unavoidable the developer must assess risks to grizzly bears and implement strategies to minimize or mitigate impacts.
  - Configure areas of forested cover within altered critical habitat to provide interior forest conditions that minimize wind exposure, provide shading, maintain natural drainage patterns, and prevent the introduction of prolific understory growth<sup>4</sup>.
  - Critical grizzly bear foraging habitat mitigation and restoration requirements will be developed by:
    - classifying and mapping grizzly bear habitat at an appropriate scale;
    - evaluating seasonal habitats and develop seasonal capability and suitability ratings;
    - modifying capability/ suitability ratings for habitat alteration;
    - modifying habitat suitability ratings for patch-specific attributes;
    - consultation with First Nations and local communities.
  - Where necessary, undertake measures to protect the ecological function of effective critical habitat. For example:
    - Maintain natural drainage patterns;
    - Prevent disruption of the natural distribution of snow avalanching;
    - Prevent wind-throw within critical habitats by leaving wind-firm buffers.
  - Maintain natural light levels.
- 

---

Critical patch habitats include beaches and beach margins, estuaries, rich non-forested fens, the edges of forested and non-forested bogs, herb-dominated patches on avalanche chutes with adjacent forest (particularly south-facing ones), herb-dominated subalpine parkland meadows, skunk cabbage swamps, floodplain ecosystems, and areas where bears fish for spawning salmon. Den cavities and surrounding stands are also considered critical. Non-forested critical habitats include a core area and buffer of forested cover. Forested critical habitats are not buffered.

Timber supply impacts of forest cover within critical habitat were modelled based on a 50m buffer equivalent in TSR II

**Access** – Minimize road-induced displacement and mortality risk of bears within or adjacent to critical habitats.

- No new active roads within 100 m of critical habitat, unless no practicable alternative exists.
- Where roads must be built within 100m of critical habitat, the developer must implement strategies to minimize or mitigate risk of bear displacement and mortality. One such strategy is visual screening of habitat from roads.

### **Area Specific Direction (Map 12, Appendix 1)**

---

A. **Access** – Minimize mortality risk to bears related to motorized road access at the watershed scale in the Saloompt, Nusatsum, Clayton, Talchako/Gyllenspetz and Smitley/Noeick landscape units.

- Deactivate all shore-accessible non public roads once operations become fallow. The developer must implement strategies to minimize or mitigate risk to bear mortality if deactivation is not desired.
- Consider closing access in sub-basins of important grizzly bear river valleys for 50 years after stands reach the free-to-grow stage (i.e. rotate forest activity among several sub-basins).

Strive to minimize the number of connected road networks through access planning.